



# Quadratic functors on pointed categories <sup>☆</sup>

Manfred Hartl <sup>a,b</sup>, Christine Vespa <sup>c,\*</sup>

<sup>a</sup> *Université de Lille Nord de France, F-59000 Lille, France*

<sup>b</sup> *UVHC, LAMAV and FR CNRS 2956, F-59313 Valenciennes, France*

<sup>c</sup> *Université de Strasbourg, Institut de Recherche Mathématique Avancée, UMR, 7501, Université de Strasbourg et CNRS, 7 rue René Descartes, 67000 Strasbourg, France*

Received 14 November 2009; accepted 22 November 2010

Available online 13 December 2010

Communicated by Henning Krause

---

## Abstract

We study polynomial functors of degree 2, called quadratic, with values in the category of abelian groups  $Ab$ , and whose source category is an arbitrary category  $\mathcal{C}$  with null object such that all objects are colimits of copies of a generating object  $E$  which is small and regular projective; this includes all categories of models  $\mathcal{V}$  of a pointed theory  $\mathcal{T}$ . More specifically, we are interested in such quadratic functors  $F$  from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$  which preserve filtered colimits and suitable coequalizers.

A functorial equivalence is established between such functors  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  and certain minimal algebraic data which we call quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules: these involve the values on  $E$  of the cross-effects of  $F$  and certain structure maps generalizing the second Hopf invariant and the Whitehead product.

Applying this general result to the case where  $E$  is a cogroup these data take a particularly simple form. This application extends results of Baues and Pirashvili obtained for  $\mathcal{C}$  being the category of groups or of modules over some ring; here quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules are equivalent with abelian square groups or quadratic  $R$ -modules, respectively.

© 2010 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

MSC: 18D; 18A25; 55U

Keywords: Polynomial functors; Quadratic functors; Algebraic theory

---

<sup>☆</sup> The first author is grateful to the Institut de Recherche Mathématique Avancée for its invitations and its hospitality during the preparation of this paper, and also to the Institut de Géométrie, Algèbre et Topologie de l'École Polytechnique Fédérale de Lausanne for an invitation where this project was started. The second author is partially supported by project ANR blanc BLAN08-2\_338236, HGRT.

\* Corresponding author.

E-mail addresses: [manfred.hartl@univ-valenciennes.fr](mailto:manfred.hartl@univ-valenciennes.fr) (M. Hartl), [vespa@math.unistra.fr](mailto:vespa@math.unistra.fr) (C. Vespa).

## Contents

1.	Polynomial functors . . . . .	3931
1.1.	Generalities on polynomial functors and bifunctors . . . . .	3931
1.2.	Algebraic theories and polynomial functors . . . . .	3935
1.3.	Symmetric bifunctors . . . . .	3936
2.	Study of the (bi-)linearization and quadratization functors . . . . .	3937
2.1.	(Bi-)linearization and the identity functor of the category of groups . . . . .	3937
2.2.	Linearization and quadratization of diagonalizable functors . . . . .	3938
2.3.	Generalized quadratic maps . . . . .	3940
2.4.	Explicit description of the (bi-)linearization and quadratization functor . . . . .	3943
2.4.1.	Linearization and bilinearization functors . . . . .	3943
2.4.2.	Quadratization functor . . . . .	3945
3.	Equivalence between polynomial functors and modules over suitable rings . . . . .	3947
3.1.	Adjunction between reduced functors and $\Lambda$ -modules . . . . .	3947
3.2.	Classification of linear functors . . . . .	3948
3.3.	Classification of polynomial functors of arbitrary degree . . . . .	3950
3.4.	The case of bifunctors . . . . .	3951
4.	Equivalence between quadratic functors and modules over suitable ringoids . . . . .	3953
4.1.	Projective generators of $\text{Quad}(\langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}, Ab)$ . . . . .	3955
4.2.	Gabriel–Popescu theorem . . . . .	3956
4.3.	The category $\mathcal{P}^{op}$ . . . . .	3956
4.4.	The category $\mathcal{R}\text{-mod}$ . . . . .	3962
5.	Quadratic $\mathcal{C}$ -modules . . . . .	3963
5.1.	Quadratic $\mathcal{C}$ -modules . . . . .	3963
5.2.	Equivalence between $\mathcal{R}$ -modules and quadratic $\mathcal{C}$ -modules . . . . .	3966
5.3.	Quadratic $\mathcal{C}$ -modules obtained from quadratic functors . . . . .	3969
6.	Quadratic tensor product . . . . .	3970
6.1.	Definition . . . . .	3970
6.2.	The quadratic tensor product defines a quadratic functor . . . . .	3973
6.3.	Computation of the quadratic tensor product $E \otimes M$ . . . . .	3975
6.4.	Computation of the cross-effect of $- \otimes M$ . . . . .	3977
6.5.	Preservation of filtered colimits and suitable coequalizers . . . . .	3981
7.	Equivalence between quadratic functors and quadratic $\mathcal{C}$ -modules . . . . .	3989
7.1.	The co-unit of the adjunction . . . . .	3989
7.2.	The unit of the adjunction . . . . .	3994
8.	Application to theories of cogroups . . . . .	3995
8.1.	Augmentation ideals: recollections and action of the linearization functor . . . . .	3996
8.2.	Computation of $cr_2U(X, Y)$ . . . . .	3997
8.3.	Computation of $T_{11}(cr_2U)(X, Y)$ . . . . .	3999
8.4.	The action of the involution on $T_{11}(cr_2U)(X, Y)$ . . . . .	4001
8.5.	The homomorphism $\hat{H}$ . . . . .	4002
8.6.	The conditions $(QM1)$ and $(QM2)$ . . . . .	4003
8.7.	Proof of Theorem 8.1 . . . . .	4005
8.8.	Application: quadratic functors from free groups of finite rank to $Ab$ . . . . .	4005
	Acknowledgments . . . . .	4009
	References . . . . .	4009

---

In their fundamental work on homology of spaces thereafter linked to their names [8] Eilenberg and Mac Lane introduced cross-effects and polynomial functors (see Section 1 for definitions). Since then, these functors proved to play a crucial role in unstable homotopy theory; and during the last decade, homological algebra of polynomial functors turned out to be a powerful tool at the crossroad of various fields, such as algebraic K-theory, generic representation theory or cohomology of general linear groups.

In this paper we determine polynomial functors of degree 2, called quadratic,  $F : \mathcal{T} \rightarrow Ab$  where  $Ab$  is the category of abelian groups and  $\mathcal{T}$  is a pointed algebraic theory, i.e. a category  $\mathcal{T}$  with null object such that all objects are finite coproducts of a generating object  $E$ . We then extend our results to determine “good” quadratic functors on an arbitrary pointed category  $\mathcal{C}$  with sums and with a small regular projective generating object  $E$ ; in particular, a functor is good if it preserves filtered colimits and suitable coequalizers (see Section 6.5 for definitions). For example,  $\mathcal{C}$  can be the category of groups or the category of algebras over a reduced operad  $\mathcal{P}$  (i.e. such that  $\mathcal{P}(0) = 0$ ).

To give a topological example, the homotopy category of finite one-point unions  $\bigvee_{i=1}^n X$  of copies of a given space  $X$  is a pointed algebraic theory, and metastable homotopy groups on such a category are examples of quadratic functors. This was one of the motivations for Baues and Pirashvili [1,4] to study quadratic functors on several particular types of algebraic theories.

In the cited papers, and also in work of the same authors with Dreckmann and Franjou on polynomial functors of higher degree [2], a functorial equivalence is established between polynomial functors on  $\mathcal{T}$  and certain minimal algebraic data: these consist of the values of the cross-effects of the corresponding functor on the generating object  $E$ , and of certain maps relating them. For example, quadratic functors from the category of free groups of finite rank to the category of groups correspond to diagrams

$$(M_e \xrightarrow{H} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{P} M_e)$$

called *square groups*, where  $M_e$  is a group,  $M_{ee}$  an abelian group,  $H$  a quadratic map and  $P$  a homomorphism (satisfying certain relations), see [4]. Those functors taking values in  $Ab$  hereby correspond to square groups for which  $H$  is linear, i.e. a homomorphism. Similarly, given a ring  $R$ , quadratic functors from the category of finitely generated free  $R$ -modules to  $Ab$  correspond to diagrams of the same type called *quadratic  $R$ -modules*, but where  $M_e$  is an abelian group endowed with a quadratic action of  $R$ ,  $M_{ee}$  is an  $R \otimes R$ -module, and  $H$  and  $P$  are homomorphisms compatible with the actions of  $R$ , see [1]. As a last example, quadratic functors from the category of finite pointed sets to  $Ab$  correspond to diagrams

$$(M_{ee} \xrightarrow{T} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{P} M_e)$$

containing no operator  $H$  but an involution  $T$  of  $M_{ee}$  instead, see [21].

The principal result of this paper is the following theorem (Theorem 7.1).

**Theorem.** *Quadratic functors from an arbitrary pointed theory  $\mathcal{T}$  to  $Ab$  (and good quadratic functors on a category  $\mathcal{C}$  as above) are functorially equivalent with diagrams*

$$M = (T_{11}(cr_2U)(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \xrightarrow{\hat{H}} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{T} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{P} M_e)$$

which we call *quadratic  $\mathcal{T}$ -modules* (resp.  *$\mathcal{C}$ -modules*), where  $T_{11}(cr_2U)$  is the bilinearization of the second cross-effect  $cr_2$  of the reduced standard projective functor  $U : \mathcal{T} \rightarrow Ab$  associated

with  $E$ ,  $\Lambda$  is the reduced monoid ring of  $\mathcal{T}(E, E)$ ,  $M_e$  and  $M_{ee}$  are modules over  $\Lambda$  and  $\Lambda \otimes \Lambda$ , resp., the map  $T$  is an involution of  $M_{ee}$ , and  $\hat{H}$  and  $P$  are homomorphisms compatible with these structures, see Definition 5.3 for details.

Just as the maps  $H$  and  $P$  above, the maps  $\hat{H}$  and  $P$  can be viewed as algebraic generalizations of the second Hopf invariant and the Whitehead product, cf. [1]. In the quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module associated with a quadratic functor  $F : \mathcal{T} \rightarrow Ab$  we have  $M_e = F(E)$  and  $M_{ee} = (cr_2 F)(E, E)$ .

Quadratic  $\mathcal{T}$ -modules can be described as modules over a certain ringoid (i.e. a pre-additive category)  $\mathcal{R}$  with two objects; this follows from an alternative approach to our original one which generalizes the approach of Pirashvili in [19]: we determine a pair of projective generators of the abelian category  $\text{Quad}(\mathcal{T}, Ab)$  of quadratic functors from  $\mathcal{T}$  to  $Ab$ , compute the maps between them by using a Yoneda lemma for polynomial functors, thus providing the ringoid  $\mathcal{R}$ , and deduce an equivalence of  $\text{Quad}(\mathcal{T}, Ab)$  with the category of  $\mathcal{R}$ -modules from the Gabriel–Popescu theorem.

We then extend the correspondence between quadratic functors and quadratic  $\mathcal{T}$ -modules to categories  $\mathcal{C}$  with sums and a small regular projective generator, in particular any category of models  $\mathcal{V}$  of a pointed theory  $\mathcal{T}$  (see Section 1.2); here  $\mathcal{T}$  identifies with the full subcategory of free objects of finite rank in  $\mathcal{V}$ .

Such an extension of quadratic functor theory from an algebraic theory to its category of models was established in [4], in the case where  $\text{Model}(\mathcal{T})$  is the category  $Gr$  of groups. This is achieved by introducing a *quadratic tensor product*  $G \otimes M \in Gr$  for a group  $G$  and a square group  $M$ . We generalize this device to arbitrary categories  $\mathcal{C}$  as above, by constructing a quadratic tensor product  $- \otimes M : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  for any quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module  $M$ , and by studying its properties: we compute its effect on  $E$  (in fact,  $E \otimes M \cong M_e$ ) and its cross-effect (Theorem 6.27), and show that it preserves filtered colimits and suitable coequalizers (Theorem 6.24).

A particularly interesting case arises when  $E$  has a cogroup structure in  $\mathcal{T}$ ; note that this holds when  $\mathcal{T}$  is the category of finitely generated free algebras over an operad, or the homotopy category of finite one-point unions of a suspension. In this cogroup case our above data simplify considerably; notably, the map  $\hat{H}$  splits into two maps

$$M_e \xrightarrow{H_1} M_{ee} \xleftarrow{H_2} T_{11}(cr_2 \mathcal{T}(E, -))(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} \text{coker}(P)$$

the first of which generalizes the map  $H$  in the cited examples above, while the second one was not visible in these special cases where it is either trivial or determined by the remaining structure. For example, when  $\mathcal{T}$  is the category of finitely generated free groups,  $H_2$  is equivalent to the map  $\Delta = H_1 P H_1 - 2H_1$  in [4]. Moreover, the involution  $T$  here is determined by the remaining structure as  $T = H_1 P - 1$ .

Summarizing we may say that in the general cogroup case a quadratic  $\mathcal{T}$ -module is a square group  $(H_1, P)$  enriched by suitable actions of  $\Lambda$  and  $\Lambda \otimes \Lambda$  and by an additional structure map  $H_2$ .

Our result shows that in order to model polynomial functors  $F : \mathcal{T} \rightarrow Ab$ , it is *not* sufficient to just add structure maps of the type  $H$  and  $P$  between the various cross-effects of  $F$  as is suggested by the special cases treated in the literature: the more complicated domain of the map  $\hat{H}$  (and its decomposition into two maps in the cogroup case) destroys this ideal picture. On the

other hand, the map  $\hat{H}$  has the interesting structure of a morphism of symmetric  $\Lambda \otimes \Lambda$ -modules which had not become apparent so far.

We finally note that along our way, we need to provide plenty of auxiliary material which might be of independent interest: we consider and use bilinearization of bifunctors, give more explicit descriptions of the linearization and quadratization of a functor, compute them in a number of cases, in particular for diagonalizable functors, and introduce a notion of quadratic map from a morphism set of a pointed category with finite sums to an abelian group which generalizes the notion of quadratic map from a group to an abelian group in the sense of Passi [18] or the first author [12], and allows to characterize quadratic functors in terms of their effect on morphism sets.

In subsequent work we plan to extend our results to quadratic functors with values in the category of *all* groups where the situation is much more intricate for several reasons. In particular, recall that for  $\mathcal{C} = Gr$  the structure map  $H$  becomes a quadratic map (see [4]). We also expect that our approach generalizes to polynomial functors of higher degree.

## 1. Polynomial functors

### 1.1. Generalities on polynomial functors and bifunctors

Throughout this paper,  $\mathcal{C}$  denotes a category with small Hom-sets, but with a possibly large set of objects (except for Section 4), with respect to a fixed universe. Thus our categories of functors with domain  $\mathcal{C}$  may have large Hom-sets, according to the conventions in Mac Lane's book [16]. We suppose that  $\mathcal{C}$  is a pointed category (i.e. having a null object denoted by 0) with finite coproducts denoted by  $\vee$ . Let  $Gr$  and  $Ab$  denote the categories of groups and abelian groups, resp. We begin by giving a definition and basic properties of the cross-effect and of polynomial functors from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Gr$ , generalizing those given in [4] for linear and quadratic functors and those given by Eilenberg and Mac Lane in the case of functors from an abelian category to  $Ab$  [8].

In the sequel,  $\mathcal{D}$  denotes one of the categories  $Gr$  or  $Ab$ . We consider functors from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $\mathcal{D}$ . In particular, for  $E$  a fixed object of  $\mathcal{C}$  we define the universal functor  $U_E : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  as follows. For a set  $S$ , let  $\mathbb{Z}[S]$  denote the free abelian group with basis  $S$ . Since for all  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $\mathcal{C}(E, X)$  is pointed with basepoint the zero map, we can define a subfunctor  $\mathbb{Z}[0]$  of  $\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{C}(E, -)]$  by  $\mathbb{Z}[0](X) = \mathbb{Z}[E \xrightarrow{0} X]$  for  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ .

**Definition 1.1.** The universal functor  $U_E : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  relative to  $E$  is the quotient of  $\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{C}(E, -)]$  by the subfunctor  $\mathbb{Z}[0]$ .

Note that  $U_E$  is the reduced standard projective functor associated with  $E$ .

To keep notation simple we write  $f$  also for the equivalence class in  $U_E(X)$  of an element  $f$  of  $\mathcal{C}(E, X)$ , and we often omit the subscript  $E$  in  $U_E$ .

Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor. We often note  $f_* = F(f)$  for a morphism  $f$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ . For objects  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  of  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $1 \leq k \leq n$  let

$$X_k \xrightarrow{i_k^n} X_1 \vee \dots \vee X_n \xrightarrow{r_k^n} X_k$$

be the canonical injection and retraction, resp., the latter being defined by  $r_k^n i_k^n = 1_{X_k}$  and  $r_k^n i_p^n = 0$  if  $p \neq k$ .

**Definition 1.2.** The  $n$ -th cross-effect of  $F$  is a functor  $cr_n F : \mathcal{C}^{\times n} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  (or a multi-functor) defined inductively by

$$cr_1 F(X) = \ker(F(0) : F(X) \rightarrow F(0)),$$

$$cr_2 F(X_1, X_2) = \ker\left((F(r_1^2), F(r_2^2))^t : F(X_1 \vee X_2) \rightarrow F(X_1) \times F(X_2)\right)$$

and, for  $n \geq 3$ , by

$$cr_n F(X_1, \dots, X_n) = cr_2(cr_{n-1} F(-, X_3, \dots, X_n))(X_1, X_2).$$

In other words, to define the  $n$ -th cross-effect of  $F$  we consider the  $(n-1)$ -st cross-effect, we fix the  $n-2$  last variables and we consider the second cross-effect of this functor. One often writes  $F(X_1 | \dots | X_n) = cr_n F(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ .

Note that  $F(X) \simeq cr_1 F(X) \rtimes F(0)$  as  $F(0) : F(0) \rightarrow F(X)$  is a natural section of  $F(0) : F(X) \rightarrow F(0)$ . Moreover, one easily checks by induction that  $cr_n F(X_1, \dots, X_n)$  is a subgroup of  $F(X_1 \vee \dots \vee X_n)$ .

In this paper we are mainly interested in *reduced* functors  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ , that is satisfying  $F(0) = 0$ . We denote by  $\text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  the category of reduced functors  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ .

There is an alternative description of cross-effects for reduced functors. To state this let  $r_{12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n}^n : X_1 \vee \dots \vee X_n \rightarrow X_1 \vee \dots \vee \hat{X}_k \vee \dots \vee X_n$  be the map whose restriction to  $X_i$  is its canonical injection for  $i \neq k$  and is the zero map if  $i = k$ .

**Proposition 1.3.** Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a functor. Then the  $n$ -th cross-effect  $cr_n F(X_1, \dots, X_n)$  is equal to the kernel of the natural homomorphism

$$\prod_{k=1}^n F(r_{12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n}^n) : F(X_1 \vee \dots \vee X_n) \rightarrow \prod_{k=1}^n F(X_1 \vee \dots \vee \hat{X}_k \vee \dots \vee X_n).$$

As a consequence, we see that  $cr_n F(X_1, \dots, X_n)$  actually is a *normal* subgroup of  $F(X_1 \vee \dots \vee X_n)$ . Moreover, it follows that  $cr_n F(X_1, \dots, X_n)$  is symmetric in  $X_1, \dots, X_n$ . Finally, we see that the functor  $cr_n$  is *multi-reduced*, i.e.,  $cr_n F(X_1, \dots, X_n)$  vanishes if one of the  $X_k$  is the zero object since then  $F(r_{12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n}^n)$  is an isomorphism.

The importance of cross-effects comes from the following property of functors with values in  $Ab$ .

**Proposition 1.4.** Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  be a reduced functor. Then there is a natural decomposition

$$F(X_1 \vee \dots \vee X_n) \simeq \bigoplus_{k=1}^n \bigoplus_{1 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_k \leq n} cr_k F(X_{i_1}, \dots, X_{i_k}).$$

The cross-effects have the following crucial property.

**Proposition 1.5.** The functor  $cr_n : \text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) \rightarrow \text{Func}(\mathcal{C}^{\times n}, \mathcal{D})$  is exact for all  $n \geq 1$ .

**Proof.** For  $n = 1$  it is a consequence of the natural decomposition  $F(X) \simeq cr_1 F(X) \rtimes F(0)$ . For  $n = 2$  this follows from the snake-lemma. For higher  $n$  use induction.  $\square$

**Definition 1.6.** A functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is said to be *polynomial of degree lower or equal to  $n$*  if  $cr_{n+1}F = 0$ . Such a functor is called *linear* if  $n = 1$  and is called *quadratic* if  $n = 2$ . We denote by  $\text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})_{\leq n}$  the full subcategory of  $\text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  consisting of polynomial functors of degree lower or equal to  $n$ .

The category  $\text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})_{\leq n}$  has the following fundamental property which is an immediate consequence of Proposition 1.5.

**Proposition 1.7.** *The category  $\text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})_{\leq n}$  is thick i.e. closed under quotients, subobjects and extensions.*

This is an immediate consequence of Proposition 1.5.

Throughout this paper we denote by  $\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}^n : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}^{\times n}$  the diagonal functor. For  $n = 2$  we write  $\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}$  instead of  $\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}^2$ .

**Definition 1.8.** For  $F \in \text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  and  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ , we denote by  $S_n^F$  the natural transformation  $S_n^F : (cr_n F) \Delta_{\mathcal{C}}^n \rightarrow F$  given by the composition

$$cr_n F(X, \dots, X) \xrightarrow{\text{inc}} F\left(\bigvee_{i=1}^n X\right) \xrightarrow{F(\nabla^n)} F(X)$$

where  $\nabla^n : \bigvee_{i=1}^n X \rightarrow X$  is the folding map.

Note that the image of  $S_n^F$  is normal in  $F(X)$ ; in fact,  $cr_n F(X, \dots, X)$  is normal in  $F(\bigvee_{i=1}^n X)$ , and  $F(\nabla^n)$  is surjective admitting  $F(i_1^n)$  as a section. This fact is used in the following:

**Definition 1.9.** For  $F \in \text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  the  $n$ -Taylorisation functor  $T_n : \text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) \rightarrow \text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})_{\leq n}$  is defined by:  $T_n F = \text{coker}((cr_{n+1} F) \Delta_{\mathcal{C}}^{n+1} \xrightarrow{S_{n+1}^F} F)$ . We call  $T_1$  the linearization functor and  $T_2$  the quadratization functor.

Let  $U_n : \text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})_{\leq n} \rightarrow \text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  denote the forgetful (i.e. inclusion) functor.

**Proposition 1.10.** *The  $n$ -Taylorisation functor  $T_n : \text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}) \rightarrow (\text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}))_{\leq n}$  is a left adjoint to  $U_n$ . The unit of the adjunction is the natural epimorphism  $t_n : F \rightarrow T_n F$  which is an isomorphism if  $F$  is polynomial of degree  $\leq n$ .*

Thus, we obtain the diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & F & & & & \\ & \swarrow^{t_{n+1}} & \downarrow^{t_n} & \searrow^{t_{n-1}} & & & \\ \cdots & \longrightarrow & T_{n+1} F & \xrightarrow{q_{n+1}} & T_n F & \xrightarrow{q_n} & T_{n-1} F \xrightarrow{q_{n-1}} \cdots \longrightarrow T_1 F \longrightarrow T_0 F = 0. \end{array}$$

Since the cross-effect  $cr_2 F$  of a functor is a bifunctor we need some general definitions and facts about bifunctors.

**Definition 1.11.** A bifunctor  $B : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is said to be bireduced if for all  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $B(X, 0) = B(0, X) = 0$ . We denote by  $\text{BiFunc}_{*,*}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  the category of bireduced bifunctors from  $\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}$  to  $\mathcal{D}$ .

A bireduced bifunctor  $B : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is said to be *bipolynomial of bidegree  $\leq (n, m)$*  if for all  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  the functors  $B(-, X), B(X, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  are polynomial of degree  $\leq n$  and  $\leq m$  respectively. We denote by  $\text{BiFunc}_{*,*}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})_{\leq (n,m)}$  the category of bipolynomial bifunctors of bidegree  $\leq (n, m)$ .

**Proposition 1.12.** The category  $\text{BiFunc}_{*,*}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})_{\leq (n,m)}$  is thick.

**Definition 1.13.** Let  $B : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  be a bireduced bifunctor and  $n, m \geq 1$ . Then the bifunctor  $T_{n,m}B : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is defined by  $T_{n,m}B(X, Y) = B(X, Y)/N_1N_2$  where

$$N_1 = \text{im}(S_{n+1}^{B(-,Y)} : cr_{n+1}B(-, Y)(X, \dots, X) \rightarrow B(X, Y)),$$

$$N_2 = \text{im}(S_{m+1}^{B(X,-)} : cr_{m+1}B(X, -)(Y, \dots, Y) \rightarrow B(X, Y)).$$

For  $(n, m) = (1, 1)$  we call  $T_{1,1}B$  the bilinearization of  $B$ .

Let  $U_{n,m} : (\text{BiFunc}_{*,*}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}))_{\leq (n,m)} \rightarrow \text{BiFunc}_{*,*}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  be the forgetful functor.

**Proposition 1.14.** The  $(n, m)$ -Taylorisation functor

$$T_{n,m} : \text{BiFunc}_{*,*}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, Ab) \rightarrow \text{BiFunc}_{*,*}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, Ab)_{\leq (n,m)}$$

is a left adjoint to  $U_{n,m}$ . The unit of this adjunction is given by the natural epimorphism  $t_{n,m} : B \rightarrow T_{n,m}B$ .

**Notation.** For brevity we will often write  $T_{11}$  and  $t_{11}$  instead of  $T_{1,1}$  and  $t_{1,1}$ , resp., and  $\bar{x}$  instead of  $t_1(x)$  or  $t_{11}(x)$  for  $x \in F(X)$  or  $x \in B(X, Y)$ , resp.

**Example 1.15.** For reduced functors  $F, G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  define the bifunctor  $F \boxtimes G : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  by  $(F \boxtimes G)(X, Y) = F(X) \otimes F(Y)$ . Then there is a natural isomorphism

$$T_{n,m}(F \boxtimes G) \simeq T_n F \boxtimes T_m G.$$

This is immediate from right-exactness of the tensor product.

In the sequel, we need the following notations: in the diagram

$$F(X_1 \vee \dots \vee X_n) \xrightarrow{((r_{12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n}^n)_*, (r_k^n)_*)^t} F(X_1 \vee \dots \vee \hat{X}_k \vee \dots \vee X_n) \oplus F(X_k) \quad (1.15.1)$$

$((i_{12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n}^n)_*, (i_k^n)_*)$

the map  $i_{12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n}^n$  is the obvious injection.



Considering the kernel of  $((r_{12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n}^n)_*, (r_k^n)_*)^t$  we obtain the maps:

$$F(X_1 \vee \dots \vee \hat{X}_k \vee \dots \vee X_n | X_k) \xrightarrow[\iota_{(12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n, k)}^n]{\rho_{(12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n, k)}^n} F(X_1 \vee \dots \vee X_n), \quad (1.15.2)$$

where  $\rho_{(12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n, k)}^n$  is the retraction induced by the section  $((i_{12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n}^n)_*, (i_k^n)_*)$  of  $((r_{12\dots(k-1)(k+1)\dots n}^n)_*, (r_k^n)_*)^t$ .

From now on, we only consider functors on  $\mathcal{C}$  with values in  $Ab$ .

## 1.2. Algebraic theories and polynomial functors

When  $\mathcal{C}$  is an algebraic theory, the polynomial functors from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$  of degree  $n$  have the crucial property that they are determined by their values on  $n$  objects of  $\mathcal{C}$ .

*Recollections on algebraic theories.* We here recall and discuss the definition of a pointed algebraic theory used in this paper and many others by Baues, Jibladze and Pirashvili.

**Definition 1.16.** A pointed (algebraic) theory  $\mathcal{T}$  is a pointed category  $\mathcal{T}$  with an object  $E$  such that any object of  $\mathcal{T}$  is isomorphic to a finite sum of copies of  $E$ . In particular, for any object  $E$  of  $\mathcal{C}$  we denote by  $\langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$  the theory generated by  $E$ , i.e. the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{C}$  consisting of the objects  $E^{\vee n} = E \vee \dots \vee E$  ( $n$  times),  $n \geq 0$ , with  $E^{\vee 0} = 0$ .

Note that this definition of an algebraic theory is dual to the classical one as being a category encoding algebraic operations, see [5]. Thus a model of a theory  $\mathcal{T}$  in our sense is a *contravariant* functor from  $\mathcal{T}$  to the category of sets transforming coproducts into products. The advantage of this definition is that here  $\mathcal{T}$  identifies with a full subcategory of its category of models, namely the category of free models of  $\mathcal{T}$  of finite rank [5]. This allows the quadratic functors we construct in Section 5, from data depending only on  $\mathcal{T}$ , to be naturally defined on the whole category of models of  $\mathcal{T}$ ; indeed, on all of  $\mathcal{C}$  in the more general case where  $\mathcal{T} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$ .

*Polynomial functors on algebraic theories.* The following property of polynomial functors is crucial in the sequel. One may find a proof of a similar result in the more general setting considered by Johnson and McCarthy in [14] (Theorem 2.11).

**Proposition 1.17.** Let  $F, G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  be two reduced polynomial functors of degree lower or equal to  $n$  and  $\phi : F \rightarrow G$  be a natural transformation of functors. If  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$ , the following statements are equivalent:

- (1)  $\phi$  is a natural isomorphism;
- (2)  $\forall k \leq n$ ,  $\phi_{E^{\vee k}}$  is an isomorphism;
- (3)  $\phi_{E^{\vee n}}$  is an isomorphism;
- (4)  $\forall k$  such that  $1 \leq k \leq n$ ,  $cr_k(\phi)_{E, \dots, E}$  is an isomorphism.

**Proof.** Clearly  $(1) \Rightarrow (2) \Rightarrow (3)$ . The implication  $(3) \Rightarrow (4)$  is a consequence of the natural decomposition given in Proposition 1.4. To prove  $(4) \Rightarrow (1)$ , let  $p \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $m = \min(p, n)$ . Proposition 1.4 provides a natural decomposition:

$$\begin{aligned} F(X_1 \vee \cdots \vee X_p) &\simeq \bigoplus_{k=1}^p \bigoplus_{1 \leq i_1 < \cdots < i_k \leq p} cr_k F(X_{i_1}, \dots, X_{i_k}) \\ &\simeq \bigoplus_{k=1}^m \bigoplus_{1 \leq i_1 < \cdots < i_k \leq p} cr_k F(X_{i_1}, \dots, X_{i_k}) \end{aligned}$$

since  $F$  is supposed to be polynomial of degree  $n$ . Using the analogous decomposition for  $G(X_1 \vee \cdots \vee X_p)$  we have:

$$\phi_{X_1 \vee \cdots \vee X_p} \simeq \bigoplus_{k=1}^m \bigoplus_{1 \leq i_1 < \cdots < i_k \leq p} cr_k(\phi)_{X_{i_1}, \dots, X_{i_k}}.$$

For  $X_1 = \cdots = X_p = E$  we deduce that  $\phi_{E^{\vee p}}$  is an isomorphism.  $\square$

Proposition 1.17 implies the following analogue for bipolynomial bifunctors.

**Corollary 1.18.** *If  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$ , for  $B, D : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  two bipolynomial bifunctors of bidegree lower or equal to  $(n, m)$  and  $\phi : B \rightarrow D$  a natural transformation of functors. Then  $\phi$  is a natural equivalence if and only if  $\phi_{(E^{\vee k}, E^{\vee l})}$  is an isomorphism for all  $k \leq n$  and  $l \leq m$ .*

### 1.3. Symmetric bifunctors

In this section we emphasize a supplementary structure on the cross-effect.

**Definition 1.19.** A symmetric bifunctor from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$  is a pair  $(B, T)$  where  $B : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  is a bifunctor and  $T : B \rightarrow B \circ V$  is a natural isomorphism, where  $V : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}$  is defined by  $V(X, Y) = (Y, X)$ .

Cross-effects are natural examples of symmetric bifunctors, as follows. For  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$  denote by  $\tau_{X,Y} : X \vee Y \rightarrow Y \vee X$  the canonical switch.

Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  be a functor. We define natural transformations  $T^F$  and  $\bar{T}^F$  where

$$T_{X,Y}^F : (cr_2 F)(X, Y) \rightarrow (cr_2 F)(Y, X) \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{T}_{X,Y}^F : T_{11}(cr_2 F)(X, Y) \rightarrow T_{11}(cr_2 F)(Y, X)$$

are given by

$$T_{X,Y}^F = (t_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} F(\tau_{X,Y})(t_{(1,2)}^2) \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{T}_{X,Y}^F = T_{11}(T^F).$$

**Proposition 1.20.** *Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  be a functor. Then  $(cr_2 F, T^F)$  and  $(T_{11}(cr_2 F), \bar{T}^F)$  are symmetric bifunctors, noting that  $T_{11}((cr_2 F) \circ V) = T_{11}(cr_2 F) \circ V$ .*

## 2. Study of the (bi-)linearization and quadratization functors

### 2.1. (Bi-)linearization and the identity functor of the category of groups

The following calculations are needed in Section 7. Recall the following fact:

**Lemma 2.1.** (See [4, Lemma 1.6].) For  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Gr}$  a reduced linear functor,  $F(X)$  is an abelian group for  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ .

For a group  $G$  and  $a, b \in G$  let  $[a, b] = aba^{-1}b^{-1}$  and let  $G^{ab} = G/[G, G]$  denote the abelianization of  $G$ .

**Proposition 2.2.** Let  $\text{Id}_{\text{Gr}} : \text{Gr} \rightarrow \text{Gr}$  be the identity functor. There is a natural isomorphism of functors  $\text{Gr} \rightarrow \text{Gr}$

$$\Gamma_1 : T_1(\text{Id}_{\text{Gr}})(G) \xleftarrow{\cong} G^{ab}$$

such that for  $g \in G$ , one has  $\Gamma_1(\bar{g}) = t_1(g)$ .

**Proof.** The map  $\Gamma_1$  is well defined by Lemma 2.1. The natural homomorphism  $ab : G \rightarrow G^{ab}$  factors through  $t_1$  followed by a map  $\bar{ab} : T_1(\text{Id}_{\text{Gr}})(G) \rightarrow G^{ab}$  since the abelianization functor  $G \mapsto G^{ab}$  is linear. It is straightforward to check that  $\bar{ab}$  is the inverse of  $\Gamma_1$ .  $\square$

We note that this result generalizes to a natural isomorphism  $T_n \text{Id}_{\text{Gr}}(G) \cong G/\gamma_{n+1}(G)$  where  $\gamma_n(G)$  is the  $n$ -th term of the lower central series of  $G$ ; this observation is the starting point of forthcoming work on nilpotent categories.

**Proposition 2.3.** Let  $\text{Id}_{\text{Gr}} : \text{Gr} \rightarrow \text{Gr}$  be the identity functor. There is a natural isomorphism of bifunctors  $\text{Gr} \times \text{Gr} \rightarrow \text{Ab}$

$$\Gamma_{11} : T_{11} \text{cr}_2(\text{Id}_{\text{Gr}})(G, H) \xleftarrow{\cong} G^{ab} \otimes H^{ab}$$

such that for  $g \in G, h \in H$  one has  $\Gamma_{11}(\bar{g} \otimes \bar{h}) = t_{11}([i_1^2 g, i_2^2 h])$ .

**Proof.** Write  $G^* = G \setminus \{1\}$ , and for a set  $E$  let  $L(E)$  denote the free group with basis  $E$ . It is well known that there is an isomorphism

$$\sigma : L(G^* \times H^*) \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{cr}_2(\text{Id}_{\text{Gr}})(G, H)$$

such that  $\sigma(g, h) = [i_1^2 g, i_2^2 h]$ , see [17]. Let  $B : \text{Gr} \times \text{Gr} \rightarrow \text{Gr}$  denote the bifunctor given by  $B(G, H) = L(G \times H)/N \simeq L(G^* \times H^*)$  where  $N$  is the normal subgroup generated by  $G \times \{1\} \cup \{1\} \times H$ . Let  $\pi : L(G \times H) \rightarrow B(G, H)$  be the canonical projection. The natural homomorphism  $\Gamma'_{11} : B(G, H) \rightarrow G^{ab} \otimes H^{ab}$  sending  $(g, h)$  to  $\bar{g} \otimes \bar{h}$  factors through  $t_{11}$  followed by a map  $\bar{\Gamma}'_{11} : T_{11} B(G, H) \rightarrow G^{ab} \otimes H^{ab}$  since the bifunctor sending  $(G, H)$  to  $G^{ab} \otimes H^{ab}$  is bilinear. So it remains to show that  $\bar{\Gamma}'_{11}$  is an isomorphism. For this it suffices to check that the map  $b : G \times H \rightarrow T_{11} B(G, H)$  sending  $(g, h)$  to  $t_{11}\pi(g, h)$  is bilinear, thus providing an inverse

of  $\bar{F}'_{11}$ . To show that  $b$  is linear in  $h$  consider the map  $B(\text{Id}_G, \nabla^2) : B(G, H \vee H) \rightarrow B(G, H)$ . One has

$$x = \pi((g, h_1 h_2)(g, h_2)^{-1}(g, h_1)^{-1}) = B(\text{Id}_G, \nabla^2)(y)$$

with  $y = \pi((g, i_1^2(h_1)i_2^2(h_2))(g, i_2^2(h_2))^{-1}(g, i_1^2(h_1))^{-1})$ . But

$$B(\text{Id}_G, r_1^2)(y) = \pi((g, h_1)(g, 1)^{-1}(g, h_1)^{-1}) = 1$$

and

$$B(\text{Id}_G, r_2^2)(y) = \pi((g, h_2)(g, h_2)^{-1}(g, 1)^{-1}) = 1,$$

whence  $y \in B(G, -)(H \mid H)$ . Thus  $x \in \text{im}(S_2^{B(G, -)})$ , whence  $t_{11}(x) = 1$ . Thus  $b$  is linear in  $h$ . Similarly one shows that  $b$  is linear in  $g$ , as desired.  $\square$

## 2.2. Linearization and quadratization of diagonalizable functors

Recall that a reduced functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  is called *diagonalizable* if there exists a bireduced bifunctor  $B : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  such that  $F = B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}$ .

**Proposition 2.4.** *The linearization of a diagonalizable functor  $F$  is trivial.*

**Proof.** The section  $B(i_1^2, i_2^2)$  of the map  $B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}(\nabla^2) : B(X \vee X, X \vee X) \rightarrow B(X, X)$  takes values in  $cr_2(B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})(X, X)$  since  $B(r_k^2, r_k^2)B(i_1^2, i_2^2) = 0$  for  $k = 1, 2$ . Hence  $S_2^F$  is surjective and  $T_1 F = 0$ .  $\square$

We need to relate the quadratization of a functor to the bilinearization of its cross-effect. Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}b$  be a reduced functor. Consider the natural map of bifunctors:

$$cr_2(t_2) : cr_2(F) \rightarrow cr_2(T_2 F).$$

Since  $T_{11}$  is the left adjoint of the forgetful functor  $U : (\text{BiFunc}_*(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{A}b))_{\leq (1,1)} \rightarrow \text{BiFunc}_*(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{A}b)$  we obtain that  $cr_2(t_2)$  factors through the unit map  $t_{11} : cr_2(F) \rightarrow T_{11}(cr_2(F))$ , thus providing a canonical morphism of bifunctors:

$$\overline{cr_2(t_2)} : T_{11}(cr_2(F)) \rightarrow cr_2(T_2 F). \quad (2.4.1)$$

The following theorem is special case of a more general result in [10].

**Theorem 2.5.** *The morphism  $\overline{cr_2(t_2)} : T_{11}(cr_2(F)) \rightarrow cr_2(T_2 F)$  is an isomorphism of bifunctors.*

**Lemma 2.6.** *If  $B : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}b$  is a bilinear bireduced bifunctor then  $B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{A}b$  is a quadratic functor.*

**Proof.** For  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}(X \vee Y) &= B(X \vee Y, X \vee Y) = B(X, X) \oplus B(Y, Y) \oplus B(X, Y) \oplus B(Y, X) \\ &= B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}(X) \oplus B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}(Y) \oplus B(X, Y) \oplus B(Y, X) \end{aligned}$$

where the second equality follows from the bilinearity of  $B$ . We deduce that  $cr_2(B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})(X, Y) = B(X, Y) \oplus B(Y, X)$  which is a bilinear functor. So  $B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}$  is quadratic.  $\square$

**Proposition 2.7.** For a bireduced bifunctor  $B : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  we have:

$$T_2(B\Delta) = (T_{11}B)\Delta.$$

**Proof.** Consider the natural map of functors

$$\Delta^*t_{11} : B\Delta \rightarrow (T_{11}B)\Delta$$

where  $(T_{11}B)\Delta$  is a quadratic functor by Lemma 2.6. Hence  $\Delta^*t_{11}$  factors through the quotient map:  $t_2 : B\Delta \twoheadrightarrow T_2B\Delta$  thus providing a canonical morphism  $f : T_2(B\Delta) \rightarrow (T_{11}B)\Delta$  making the following diagram commutative:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & \Delta^*t_{11} & & \\ & \searrow & \text{---} & \searrow & \\ B\Delta & \xrightarrow[t_2]{} & T_2(B\Delta) & \xrightarrow[f]{} & (T_{11}B)\Delta. \end{array}$$

To prove that  $f$  is an isomorphism first note that  $f$  is an epimorphism since  $\Delta^*t_{11}$  is. To prove that  $f$  is a monomorphism it is sufficient to construct a map:  $\alpha : (T_{11}B)\Delta \rightarrow T_2B\Delta$  such that  $\alpha f t_2 = t_2$  since  $t_2$  is epimorphic. For  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ , the map:  $B(i_1, i_2) : B(X, X) \rightarrow B(X \vee X, X \vee X) = B\Delta(X \vee X)$  induces a map  $\beta : B(X, X) \rightarrow cr_2(B\Delta)(X, X)$  such that  $i_{(1,2)}^2 \beta = B(i_1, i_2)$  since  $B(r_1, r_1)B(i_1, i_2) = B(r_2, r_2)B(i_1, i_2) = 0$  as  $B$  is bireduced.. We consider the map  $\alpha_X : T_{11}B(X, X) \rightarrow T_2(B\Delta)(X)$  given by the following composition:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} T_{11}B(X, X) & \xrightarrow{T_{11}(\beta)} & (T_{11}cr_2(B\Delta))(X, X) & \xrightarrow{\overline{cr_2(t_2)}(X, X)} & cr_2(T_2B\Delta)(X, X) & \xrightarrow{i_{(1,2)}^2} & T_2(B\Delta)(X \vee X) \\ & & & & & & \downarrow T_2(B\Delta)(\nabla) \\ & & & & & & T_2(B\Delta)(X) \end{array}$$

where  $\overline{cr_2(t_2)}$  is the canonical morphism of bifunctors given in (2.4.1).

By naturality of  $t_{11}$ ,  $t_2$  and by definition of  $\overline{cr_2(t_2)}$  we get the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B(X, X) & \xrightarrow{(t_{11})_{(X, X)}} & T_{11}B(X, X) \\
 \beta \downarrow & & \downarrow T_{11}(\beta) \\
 cr_2(B\Delta)(X, X) & \xrightarrow{(t_{11})_{(X, X)}} & (T_{11}cr_2(B\Delta))(X, X) \\
 \downarrow \iota_{(1,2)}^2 & \searrow cr_2(t_2)_{(X, X)} & \downarrow \overline{cr_2(t_2)}_{(X, X)} \\
 B\Delta(X \vee X) & & cr_2(T_2(B\Delta))(X, X) \\
 B\Delta(\nabla) \downarrow & \searrow (t_2)_{X \vee X} & \downarrow \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \\
 B\Delta(X) = B(X, X) & & T_2(B\Delta)(X \vee X) \\
 & \searrow (t_2)_X & \downarrow T_2(B\Delta)(\nabla) \\
 & & T_2(B\Delta)(X).
 \end{array}$$

Consequently, we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\alpha)_X \circ f_X \circ (t_2)_X &= (\alpha)_X \circ (\Delta^* t_{11})_X \\
 &= (\alpha)_X \circ (t_{11})_{(X, X)} \\
 &= (t_2)_X \circ B\Delta(\nabla) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \beta \quad \text{by the previous commutative diagram} \\
 &= (t_2)_X B(\nabla, \nabla) B(i_1, i_2) \\
 &= (t_2)_X \quad \text{since } \nabla i_1 = \nabla i_2 = Id_X. \quad \square
 \end{aligned}$$

### 2.3. Generalized quadratic maps

We introduce the notions of cross-effect and quadraticity of maps from morphisms sets of  $\mathcal{C}$  to abelian groups, generalizing Passi's notion of quadratic (more generally polynomial) maps between abelian groups. The quadratization functor  $T_2$  turns out to provide universal quadratic maps in this sense, and allows to characterize quadratic functors from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$  as being functors whose restriction to each morphism set is a quadratic map.

We start by recalling some elementary facts on polynomial maps between groups. Let  $f : G \rightarrow A$  be a function from a group  $G$  to an abelian group  $A$  such that  $f(1) = 0$ .

Then  $f$  is said to be polynomial of degree  $\leq n$  if its  $\mathbb{Z}$ -linear extension  $\tilde{f} : \mathbb{Z}[G] \rightarrow A$  to the group ring  $\mathbb{Z}[G]$  of  $G$  annihilates the  $n + 1$ -st power  $I^{n+1}(G)$  of the augmentation ideal  $I(G)$  of  $\mathbb{Z}[G]$ , or equivalently, if its restriction to  $I(G)$  factors through the natural projection  $I(G) \twoheadrightarrow P_n(G) := I(G)/I^{n+1}(G)$ , see [18]. This property can be characterized by using cross-effects of maps [11]; in particular,  $f$  is quadratic, i.e. polynomial of degree  $\leq 2$ , iff its cross effect  $d_f : G \times G \rightarrow A$ ,  $d_f(a, b) = f(ab) - f(a) - f(b)$ , is a bilinear map, see also [12].

Now we generalize this situation in replacing the group  $G$  by a Hom-set in the category  $\mathcal{C}$ . Let  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $A \in Ab$  and  $\varphi : \mathcal{C}(X, Y) \rightarrow A$  an arbitrary normalized function, which means that

$f(0) = 0$ . Then quadraticity of  $\varphi$  is defined in terms of a suitable notion of cross-effect of  $\varphi$ , and is characterized by a universal factorization property generalizing the previous definition in terms of  $P_2(G)$ .

**Definition 2.8.** The second cross-effect of  $\varphi$  is the homomorphism of groups

$$cr_2(\varphi) : U_X(Y \mid Y) \rightarrow A$$

defined as follows. Let  $c\tilde{r}_2(\varphi) : U_X(Y \vee Y) \rightarrow A$  given by  $c\tilde{r}_2(\varphi)(\xi) = \varphi(\nabla\xi) - \varphi(r_1\xi) - \varphi(r_2\xi)$  for  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(X, Y \vee Y)$ . Now let  $cr_2(\varphi) = c\tilde{r}_2(\varphi)\iota_{(1,2)}^2$ .

**Definition 2.9.** For a bifunctor  $B : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  and a homomorphism of groups  $\psi : B(Y, Y) \rightarrow A$  we say that  $\psi$  is bilinear if  $\psi$  factors through  $t_{11} : B(Y, Y) \rightarrow (T_{11}B)(Y, Y)$ . Now  $\varphi$  is said to be quadratic if its cross-effect  $cr_2(\varphi)$  is bilinear.

A universal quadratic map is provided by the quadratization functor  $T_2$ ; this fact is needed in Lemma 5.14 below. To state this, let  $\bar{\varphi} : U_X(Y) \rightarrow A$  be the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -linear extension of  $\varphi$ .

**Proposition 2.10.** *The map  $\varphi : \mathcal{C}(X, Y) \rightarrow A$  is quadratic if and only if  $\bar{\varphi}$  factors through  $t_2 : U_X(Y) \twoheadrightarrow T_2U_X(Y)$ .*

**Remark 2.11.** The above definitions and proposition indeed formally generalizes the situation for quadratic maps between groups recalled at the beginning of the paragraph. To see this, take  $\mathcal{C} = Gr$ ,  $X = \mathbb{Z}$  and  $Y = G$ . Using the isomorphism of functors  $U_{\mathbb{Z}} \cong I$  in Section 8.1 below, and Propositions 2.7, 8.5 and 2.3 one gets an isomorphism of functors  $\mathcal{E}' : T_2U_{\mathbb{Z}} \cong P_2 = I/I^3$  such that  $\mathcal{E}'(t_2a) = a - 1 + I^3(G)$  for  $a \in G$ . This shows that for a map  $G = Gr(\mathbb{Z}, G) \xrightarrow{\varphi} A$ , the map  $\bar{\varphi}$  factors through  $t_2$  iff it is polynomial of degree  $\leq 2$  in Passi's sense. On the other hand, it can be deduced from Proposition 8.7 that  $cr_2(\varphi)$  is bilinear in the sense of Definition 2.9 iff its group theoretic cross-effect  $d_{\varphi}$  is a bilinear map in the usual sense. Thus Proposition 2.10 here is equivalent with the characterization of polynomial maps of degree  $\leq 2$  by the bilinearity of their cross effect.

**Remark 2.12.** It is well known that a functor  $F : \mathcal{A} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  between additive categories  $\mathcal{A}$  and  $\mathcal{B}$  is polynomial of degree  $\leq n$  iff for all objects  $A, B \in \mathcal{A}$  the map  $F : \mathcal{A}(A, B) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(FA, FB)$  is polynomial of degree  $\leq n$  in the sense of Passi [18]; we point out that the latter notion can be described in terms of cross-effects of maps [11]. In degree  $n = 2$ , our notion of quadratic map above allows to generalize this fact to functors  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$ , as follows: let  $\bar{\mathbb{Z}}[\mathcal{C}]$  be the ringoid with the same objects as  $\mathcal{C}$  and morphisms  $\bar{\mathbb{Z}}[\mathcal{C}](X, Y) = \bar{\mathbb{Z}}[\mathcal{C}(X, Y)] = U_X(Y)$ ; similarly, let  $P_n\mathcal{C}$  be the quotient ringoid of  $\bar{\mathbb{Z}}[\mathcal{C}]$  where  $P_n\mathcal{C}(X, Y) = T_nU_X(Y)$ ; this category is introduced, in a more general context, by Johnson and McCarthy in [14]. They prove that  $F$  is polynomial of degree  $\leq n$  iff the natural extension of  $F$  to an additive functor  $\bar{F} : \bar{\mathbb{Z}}[\mathcal{C}] \rightarrow \mathcal{B}$  factors through the natural quotient functor  $t_n : \bar{\mathbb{Z}}[\mathcal{C}] \twoheadrightarrow P_n\mathcal{C}$ . Now for  $n = 2$  the latter property is equivalent with all maps  $F : \mathcal{C}(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{B}(FX, FY)$ ,  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$ , being quadratic, by Proposition 2.10.

In order to prove Proposition 2.10 and also for later use, we need the following description of quadratization functor from the bilinearization functor.

**Proposition 2.13.** For  $F \in \text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D})$  and  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  we have:

$$T_2(F) = \text{coker}(\ker(cr_2 F(X, X) \xrightarrow{t_1} (T_1 cr_2 F)(X, X)) \xrightarrow{S_2^F} F(X)).$$

**Proof.** We have the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 cr_3 F(X, X, X) = cr_2(cr_2 F(-, X))(X, X) & \xrightarrow{i_{(1,2)}^2} & cr_2 F(-, X)(X \vee X) & \xrightarrow{i_{(12,3)}^3} & F(X \vee X \vee X) \\
 & \searrow S_2^{F(-|X)} & \downarrow F(\nabla^2|1) & & \downarrow F(\nabla^3) \\
 & & cr_2 F(-, X)(X) & \xrightarrow{S_2^F} & F(X) \\
 & & & \searrow t_1 & \\
 & & & & T_1(cr_2 F(-, X))(X)
 \end{array}$$

where the right hand square commutes by the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 cr_2 F(X \vee X, X) & \xrightarrow{\quad} & F(X \vee X \vee X) \\
 \downarrow F(\nabla^2|1) & \nearrow F(\nabla^2 \vee 1) & \downarrow F(\nabla^3) \\
 & F(X \vee X) & \\
 cr_2 F(X, X) & \xrightarrow{i_{(1,2)}^2} & F(X) \\
 & \searrow F(\nabla^2) & \\
 & & F(X)
 \end{array}$$

By Definition 1.9

$$T_2 F(X) = \text{coker}(cr_3 F(X, X, X) \xrightarrow{S_3^F} F(X)) = \text{coker}(cr_3 F(X, X, X) \xrightarrow{F(\nabla^3) i_{(12,3)}^3 i_{(1,2)}^2} F(X)).$$

We deduce from the first diagram that

$$T_2 F(X) = \text{coker}(cr_3 F(X, X, X) \xrightarrow{S_2^F S_2^{F(-|X)}} F(X)) \quad (2.13.1)$$

$$= \text{coker}(\ker(cr_2 F(-, X)(X) \xrightarrow{t_1} T_1 cr_2 F(-, X)(X)) \xrightarrow{S_2^F} F(X)). \quad (2.13.2)$$

Considering  $cr_2 F(X, -)$  instead of  $cr_2 F(-, X)$ , we can write down similar commutative diagrams which imply

$$T_2 F(X) = \text{coker}(\ker(cr_2 F(X, -)(X) \xrightarrow{t_1} T_1 cr_2 F(X, -)(X)) \xrightarrow{S_2^F} F(X)). \quad (2.13.3)$$

Combining (2.13.2) and (2.13.3) we deduce the result.  $\square$



**Proof of Proposition 2.10.** For  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} cr_2(\varphi)\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) &= \varphi(\nabla\xi) - \varphi(r_1\xi) - \varphi(r_2\xi) - (\varphi(\nabla i_1 r_1 \xi) - \varphi(r_1 i_1 r_1 \xi) - \varphi(r_2 i_1 r_1 \xi)) \\ &\quad - (\varphi(\nabla i_2 r_2 \xi) - \varphi(r_1 i_2 r_2 \xi) - \varphi(r_2 i_2 r_2 \xi)) \\ &= \varphi(\nabla\xi) - \varphi(r_1\xi) - \varphi(r_2\xi) \\ &= \bar{\varphi}\nabla(\xi - i_1 r_1 \xi - i_2 r_2 \xi) \\ &= \bar{\varphi}\nabla t_{(1,2)}^2 \rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \\ &= \bar{\varphi}S_2^{U_X} \rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi). \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $cr_2(\varphi) = \bar{\varphi}S_2^{U_X}$ . Now,  $\varphi$  is quadratic iff  $cr_2(\varphi)\text{Ker}(t_{11}) = 0$ . But  $cr_2(\varphi)\text{Ker}(t_{11}) = \bar{\varphi}S_2^{U_X}\text{Ker}(t_{11}) = \bar{\varphi}\text{Ker}(t_2)$  by Proposition 2.13, whence the assertion.  $\square$

#### 2.4. Explicit description of the (bi-)linearization and quadratization functor

The general principle of this section is to express the values  $T_n F(X)$  of the functor  $T_n F$  as a cokernel of a map  $F(X^{\vee(n+1)}) \rightarrow F(X)$  instead of a map  $cr_{n+1} F(X, \dots, X) \rightarrow F(X)$  since the elements of  $cr_{n+1} F(X, \dots, X)$  are more difficult to describe than the elements of  $F(X^{\vee(n+1)})$ .

As a particular case of diagrams (1.15.1) and (1.15.2) we have the following split short exact sequence:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & \rho_{(1,2)}^2 & & (i_{1*}^2, i_{2*}^2) & & \\ & \swarrow & & \searrow & & \swarrow & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & F(X|Y) & \xrightarrow[t_{(1,2)}^2]{} & F(X \vee Y) & \xrightarrow[(r_{1*}^2, r_{2*}^2)^t]{} & F(X) \oplus F(Y) \longrightarrow 0 \end{array} \quad (2.13.4)$$

which implies that:

$$Id_{F(X \vee Y)} = t_{(1,2)}^2 \circ \rho_{(1,2)}^2 + i_{1*}^2 \circ r_{1*}^2 + i_{2*}^2 \circ r_{2*}^2 \quad (2.13.5)$$

so

$$\text{Im}(t_{(1,2)}^2) = \text{Im}(Id_{F(X \vee Y)} - i_{1*}^2 \circ r_{1*}^2 - i_{2*}^2 \circ r_{2*}^2). \quad (2.13.6)$$

Furthermore, we obtain a natural isomorphism of bifunctors

$$F(X|Y) \simeq F(X \vee Y) / i_{1*}^2 F(X) + i_{2*}^2 F(Y). \quad (2.13.7)$$

##### 2.4.1. Linearization and bilinearization functors

In the following proposition we give an explicit description of the linearization functor  $T_1$ .

**Proposition 2.14.** For  $F \in \text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  and  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  we have:

$$T_1(F)(X) = \text{coker}\left(F(X \vee X) \xrightarrow{S_2^F \circ \rho_{(1,2)}^2} F(X)\right)$$

so

$$\begin{aligned} T_1 F(X) &= F(X) / \text{Im}(S_2^F \circ \rho_{(1,2)}^2) = F(X) / \{\nabla_*^2(x) - r_{1*}^2(x) - r_{2*}^2(x) \mid x \in F(X \vee X)\} \\ &= F(X) / \{(1, 1)_* - (1, 0)_* - (0, 1)_*(x) \mid x \in F(X \vee X)\}. \end{aligned}$$

**Proof.** The map  $\rho_{(1,2)}^2$  is surjective by the short exact sequence (2.13.4), hence

$$T_1(F)(X) = \text{coker}(F(X \mid X) \xrightarrow{S_2^F} F(X)) = \text{coker}(F(X \vee X) \xrightarrow{S_2^F \circ \rho_{(1,2)}^2} F(X))$$

and we have by (2.13.5):

$$\begin{aligned} S_2^F \circ \rho_{(1,2)}^2 &= F(\nabla^2) i_{(1,2)}^2 \rho_{(1,2)}^2 = F(\nabla^2) (Id - i_{1*}^2 \circ r_{1*}^2 - i_{2*}^2 \circ r_{2*}^2) \\ &= \nabla_*^2 - r_{1*}^2 - r_{2*}^2. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Similarly we obtain:

**Proposition 2.15.** For  $B \in \text{BiFunc}_{*,*}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, Ab)$  and  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$  we have:

$$T_{11} B(X, Y) = \text{coker}(B(X \vee X, Y) \oplus B(X, Y \vee Y) \xrightarrow{(S_2^{cr_2 B(-, Y)} \circ (\rho_{(1,2)}^2)^1, S_2^{cr_2 B(X, -)} \circ (\rho_{(1,2)}^2)^2)} B(X, Y))$$

where  $(\rho_{(1,2)}^2)^1 : B(-, Y)(X \vee X) \rightarrow cr_2 B(-, Y)(X, X)$  and  $(\rho_{(1,2)}^2)^2 : B(X, -)(Y \vee Y) \rightarrow cr_2 B(X, -)(Y, Y)$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} T_{11} B(X, Y) &= B(X, Y) / \text{Im}(S_2^F \circ (\rho_{(1,2)}^2)^X, S_2^F \circ (\rho_{(1,2)}^2)^Y) \\ &= B(X, Y) / \{K(x, y) \mid x \in B(X \vee X, Y), y \in B(X, Y \vee Y)\} \end{aligned}$$

where  $K(x, y) = B(\nabla^2, Id)(x) - B(r_1^2, Id)(x) - B(r_2^2, Id)(x) + B(Id, \nabla^2)(y) - B(Id, r_1^2)(y) - B(Id, r_2^2)(y)$ .

Recall that for  $F \in \text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  we have  $cr_2 F \in \text{BiFunc}_{*,*}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, Ab)$ , so we can consider the bilinearization of the bifunctor  $cr_2 F$ .

Applying the previous proposition to  $cr_2 F$  gives us a description of  $T_{11} cr_2 F(X, Y)$  as a quotient of  $cr_2 F(X, Y)$  where the relations are obtained from elements in  $cr_2 F(X \vee X, Y)$  and  $cr_2 F(X, Y \vee Y)$ . A more manageable description of  $T_{11} cr_2 F(X, Y)$ , as a quotient of  $F(X \vee Y)$ , is given as follows:

**Proposition 2.16.** For  $F \in \text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  and  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} T_{11} cr_2 F(X|Y) &= F(X \vee Y) / \{i_{1*}^2(x) + i_{2*}^2(y) + A(z_1) + B(z_2) \mid x \in F(X), y \in F(Y), \\ &\quad z_1 \in F(X \vee X \vee Y), z_2 \in F(X \vee Y \vee Y)\} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$A = F(\nabla^2 \vee Id) - F(r_1^2 \vee Id) - F(r_2^2 \vee Id)$$

and

$$B = F(Id \vee \nabla^2) - F(Id \vee r_1^2) - F(Id \vee r_2^2).$$

**Proof.** By Proposition 2.14 we have

$$T_1(cr_2 F(-, Y))(X) = \text{coker}(F(\nabla^2 | Id) - F(r_1^2 | Id) - F(r_2^2 | Id)).$$

We obtain the term  $A$  from the following commutative diagram where the vertical arrows are isomorphisms of bifunctors by (2.13.7):

$$\begin{array}{ccc} cr_2 F(-, Y)(X \vee X) & \xrightarrow{F(\nabla^2 | Id) - F(r_1^2 | Id) - F(r_2^2 | Id)} & cr_2 F(-, Y)(X) \\ \downarrow \simeq & & \downarrow \simeq \\ F((X \vee X) \vee Y)/(i_{12*}^3 F(X \vee X) + i_{3*}^3 F(Y)) & \xrightarrow{F(\nabla^2 \vee Id) - F(r_1^2 \vee Id) - F(r_2^2 \vee Id)} & F(X \vee Y)/(i_{1*}^2 F(X) + i_{2*}^2 F(Y)). \end{array}$$

Similarly, considering  $T_1(cr_2 F(X, -))(Y)$  we obtain the term  $B$ .  $\square$

#### 2.4.2. Quadraticization functor

**Proposition 2.17.** For  $F \in \text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  and  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} T_2 F(X) &= F(X)/\{(\nabla_*^3 - (\nabla^2 r_{12}^3)_* - (\nabla^2 r_{13}^3)_* - (\nabla^2 r_{23}^3)_* + r_{1*}^3 + r_{2*}^3 + r_{3*}^3)(x) \\ &\quad | x \in F(X \vee X \vee X)\} \\ &= F(X)/\{((1, 1, 1)_* - (1, 1, 0)_* - (1, 0, 1)_* - (0, 1, 1)_* \\ &\quad + (1, 0, 0)_* + (0, 1, 0)_* + (0, 0, 1)_*)(x) \\ &\quad | x \in F(X \vee X \vee X)\}. \end{aligned}$$

**Proof.** By the proof of Proposition 2.13 we have

$$T_2 F(X) = \text{coker}(cr_3 F(X, X, X) \xrightarrow{S_2^F S_2^{cr_2 F(-, X)}} F(X)).$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
cr_2 F(-, X)(X \vee X) & \xleftarrow{\iota_{(1,2)}^2} & cr_2(cr_2 F(-, X))(X) & & \\
\uparrow Id - cr_2 F(i_1^2 r_1^2, Id) - cr_2 F(i_2^2 r_2^2, Id) & & \searrow cr_2 F(\nabla^2, Id) & & \downarrow S_2^{cr_2 F(-, X)} \\
cr_2 F(-, X)(X \vee X) & \xrightarrow{F(\nabla^2 | Id) - F(r_1^2 | Id) - F(r_2^2 | Id)} & cr_2 F(-, X)(X) & & \\
\downarrow \iota_{(12,3)}^3 \quad \uparrow \rho_{(12,3)}^3 & & \downarrow \iota_{(1,2)}^2 & & \searrow S_2^F \\
F((X \vee X) \vee X) & \xrightarrow{F(\nabla^2 \vee Id) - F(r_1^2 \vee Id) - F(r_2^2 \vee Id)} & F(X \vee X) & \xrightarrow{F(\nabla^2)} & F(X)
\end{array}$$
$$\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Im}(S_2^F S_2^{cr_2 F(-, X)}) &= \operatorname{Im}(S_2^F cr_2 F(\nabla^2, Id) i_{(1,2)}^2) \\
&= \operatorname{Im}(S_2^F cr_2 F(\nabla^2, Id) i_{(1,2)}^2 \rho_{(1,2)}^2) \quad \text{since } \rho_{(1,2)}^2 \text{ is surjective} \\
&= \operatorname{Im}(S_2^F cr_2 F(\nabla^2, Id) (Id - cr_2 F(i_1^2 r_1^2, Id) - cr_2 F(i_2^2 r_2^2, Id))) \quad \text{by (2.13.5)} \\
&= \operatorname{Im}(S_2^F (F(\nabla^2 | Id) - F(r_1^2 | Id) - F(r_2^2 | Id))) \\
&= \operatorname{Im}(S_2^F (F(\nabla^2 | Id) - F(r_1^2 | Id) - F(r_2^2 | Id)) \rho_{(12,3)}^3) \\
&\quad \text{since } \rho_{(12,3)}^3 \text{ is surjective} \\
&= \operatorname{Im}(F(\nabla^2) (F(\nabla^2 \vee Id) - F(r_1^2 \vee Id) - F(r_2^2 \vee Id)) i_{(1,2)}^2 \rho_{(12,3)}^3).
\end{aligned}$$
$$0 \longrightarrow F(X \vee X|Y) \xrightarrow[\iota_{(12,3)}^3]{\rho_{(12,3)}^3} F(X \vee X \vee Y) \xrightarrow[(r_{12*}^3, r_{3*}^3)^t]{(i_{12*}^3, i_{3*}^3)} F(X \vee X) \oplus F(Y) \longrightarrow 0$$
$$\begin{aligned}
& (F(\nabla^2 \vee Id) - F(r_1^2 \vee Id) - F(r_2^2 \vee Id))i_{(12,3)}^3 \rho_{(12,3)}^3 \\
&= (F(\nabla^2 \vee Id) - F(r_1^2 \vee Id) - F(r_2^2 \vee Id))(Id - i_{12*}^3 r_{12*}^3 - i_{3*}^3 r_{3*}^3) \\
&= F(\nabla^2 \vee Id) - F(r_1^2 \vee Id) - F(r_2^2 \vee Id) - F(i_1^2 \nabla^2 r_{12}^3) + F(i_1^2 r_1^3) + F(i_1^2 r_2^3) \\
&\quad - F(i_2^2 r_3^3) + F(i_2^2 r_3^3) + F(i_2^2 r_3^3) \\
&= F(\nabla^2 \vee Id) - F(r_1^2 \vee Id) - F(r_2^2 \vee Id) - F(i_1^2 \nabla^2 r_{12}^3) + F(i_1^2 r_1^3) + F(i_1^2 r_2^3) + F(i_2^2 r_3^3).
\end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
& \text{Im}(S_2^F S_2^{cr_2 F(-, X)}) \\
&= \text{Im}(F(\nabla^2)(F(\nabla^2 \vee Id) - F(r_1^2 \vee Id) - F(r_2^2 \vee Id) - F(i_1^2 \nabla^2 r_{12}^3) \\
&\quad + F(i_1^2 r_1^3) + F(i_1^2 r_2^3) + F(i_2^2 r_3^3))) \\
&= \text{Im}(F(\nabla^3) - F(\nabla^2 r_{13}^3) - F(\nabla^2 r_{23}^3) - F(\nabla^2 r_{12}^3) + F(r_1^3) + F(r_2^3) + F(r_3^3)). \quad \square
\end{aligned}$$

### 3. Equivalence between polynomial functors and modules over suitable rings

In this section we give a classification of polynomial functors by modules over suitable rings essentially due to Johnson and McCarthy in [14,15]. Although this provides a classification of polynomial functors of all degrees, it is not satisfactory since the rings that appear are very complicated. So this complete classification does not seem to be manageable for functors of degree higher than 1. Therefore our aim is to describe polynomial functors by minimal data, which is achieved for quadratic functors in this paper.

#### 3.1. Adjunction between reduced functors and $\Lambda$ -modules

In this section, we give an adjunction between reduced functors and modules over a certain ring  $\Lambda$  defined in Lemma 3.1. This is the starting point of the equivalence between polynomial functors and module categories given in the sequel. We begin by the following straightforward lemmas.

**Lemma 3.1.** *Composition in  $\mathcal{C}$  induces a ring structure on  $\Lambda := U(E)$  and a structure of right  $\Lambda$ -module on  $U(X)$  for any  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ .*

**Lemma 3.2.** *For  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  a reduced functor,  $F(E)$  is a left  $\Lambda$ -module via*

$$\alpha.x := F(\alpha)(x)$$

for  $\alpha \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$  and  $x \in F(E)$ .

So, we can give the following definition.

**Definition 3.3.** The functor

$$\mathbb{S} : \text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, Ab) \rightarrow \Lambda\text{-Mod}$$

is defined by  $\mathbb{S}(F) = F(E)$  for  $F \in \text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$ .

A left adjoint of  $\mathbb{S}$  is provided in the following definition.

**Definition 3.4.** The functor

$$\mathbb{T} : \Lambda\text{-Mod} \rightarrow \text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$$

is defined by  $\mathbb{T}(M)(X) = U(X) \otimes_{\Lambda} M$  for  $M \in \Lambda\text{-Mod}$ .

**Proposition 3.5.** *The functor  $\mathbb{T}$  is a left adjoint of  $\mathbb{S}$ .*

*The unit of this adjunction is the canonical isomorphism*

$$u_M : M \xrightarrow{\cong} \Lambda \otimes_{\Lambda} M = \mathbb{S}\mathbb{T}(M) \quad \text{for } M \in \Lambda\text{-Mod}.$$

*The co-unit is*

$$(u'_F)_X : \mathbb{T}\mathbb{S}(F)(X) = U(X) \otimes_{\Lambda} F(E) \rightarrow F(X),$$

where  $(u'_F)_X(f \otimes x) = F(f)(x)$  for  $f \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$ , and  $x \in F(E)$ .

Note that although  $\text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  may have large Hom-sets the adjunction isomorphism is an isomorphism of small abelian groups since the category  $\Lambda\text{-Mod}$  has small Hom-sets. A similar remark applies to all adjunctions considered in this paper.

We consider the map  $u'_F$  as a first order approximation of  $F$ ; if  $F$  is polynomial of degree  $n$  then  $u'_F$  may be reduced to a morphism

$$\overline{u'_F} : T_n(\mathbb{T}\mathbb{S}(F)) \rightarrow F.$$

This turns out to be an isomorphism for  $n = 1$  but is not for  $n > 1$ . So our approach to polynomial functors consists of inductively improving the approximation  $\overline{u'_F}$  in order to get an isomorphism again, by taking into account higher and higher cross-effects.

### 3.2. Classification of linear functors

Let  $\text{Lin}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  denote the category of linear reduced functors from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$ . In this section we show that if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a pointed theory then the category  $\text{Lin}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  is equivalent to the category of modules over a suitable ring.

We begin by providing a number of equivalent characterizations of linear functors.

**Lemma 3.6.** *Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  be a reduced functor. Then the following conditions are equivalent*

- (1)  $F$  is linear.
- (2)  $S_2^F = 0$  where  $S_2^F : cr_2(F)\Delta_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow F$  is defined in Definition 1.8.
- (3) For  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$  one has

$$1_{F(X \vee Y)} = i_{1*}^2 r_{1*}^2 + i_{2*}^2 r_{2*}^2.$$

- (4) For  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$  and  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(X, Y \vee Y)$  one has

$$F(\nabla^2 \xi) = F(r_1^2 \xi) + F(r_2^2 \xi).$$

**Proof.** By definition,  $F$  is linear if  $cr_2(F) = 0$ . Since  $S_2^F : cr_2(F)\Delta_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow F$  we have  $S_2^F = 0$ . Conversely, if  $S_2^F = 0$ , by Proposition 1.10,  $F \simeq T_1 F$  so  $F$  is linear and we proved that (1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (2).

By the short exact sequence (2.13.4) we have (1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (3).

By Proposition 1.9,  $F$  is linear if and only if  $F \simeq T_1 F$ , so by Proposition 2.14 this is equivalent to,  $\forall y \in F(Y \vee Y)$ :  $F(\nabla^2)(y) = F(r_1^2)(y) + F(r_2^2)(y)$ . Applying the last equality to  $y = F(\xi)(x) \in F(Y \vee Y)$  where  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(X, Y \vee Y)$  and  $x \in F(X)$ , we obtain (1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (4).  $\square$

**Proposition 3.7.** *The abelian group  $\overline{\Lambda} := (T_1 U)(E)$  is a ring and  $T_1 U(X)$  has a right  $\overline{\Lambda}$ -module structure such that  $t_1$  is  $\Lambda$ -equivariant (i.e. for  $\lambda \in \Lambda$  and  $x \in U(X)$ ,  $t_1(x\lambda) = t_1(x)t_1(\lambda)$ ).*

**Proof.** For  $f \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$  the relation  $(S_2^U)_E c r_2 U(f, f) = U(f)(S_2^U)_E$  shows that  $\text{Im}((S_2^U)_E)$  is a left ideal of  $\Lambda$ , and we deduce from the following commutative diagram that  $\text{Ker}(t_1) = \text{Im}((S_2^U)_E)$  is a right ideal, too:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U(E) & \xrightarrow{\alpha^*} & U(E) \\ t_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow t_1 \\ T_1 U(E) & \xrightarrow{T_1(\alpha^*)} & T_1 U(E) \end{array}$$

where  $\alpha : E \rightarrow E$ . Consequently  $\overline{\Lambda}$  is a ring.

For  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $T_1 U(X)$  is a right  $\overline{\Lambda}$ -module via

$$t_1(f).t_1(\alpha) = t_1(f\alpha)$$

for  $f \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$  and  $\alpha \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ ; this is well defined again by naturality of  $S_2^U$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 3.8.** *For  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ab}$  a linear reduced functor,  $F(E)$  is a left  $\overline{\Lambda}$ -module via*

$$\bar{\alpha}.x := F(\alpha)(x)$$

for  $\alpha \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$  and  $x \in F(E)$ .

**Proof.** By Proposition 2.14 we have

$$\overline{\Lambda} = \Lambda / \{ \nabla^2 \xi - r_1^2 \xi - r_2^2 \xi \mid \xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E) \}.$$

But

$$\begin{aligned} (\nabla^2 \xi - r_1^2 \xi - r_2^2 \xi).x &= \nabla^2 \xi.x - r_1^2 \xi.x - r_2^2 \xi.x = F(\nabla^2 \xi)(x) - F(r_1^2 \xi)(x) - F(r_2^2 \xi)(x) \\ &= (F(\nabla^2 \xi) - F(r_1^2 \xi) - F(r_2^2 \xi))(x) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

by Lemma 3.6(4).  $\square$

This leads to the following definition.

**Definition 3.9.** The functor

$$\mathbb{S}_1 : \text{Lin}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Ab}) \rightarrow \overline{\Lambda}\text{-Mod}$$

is defined by  $\mathbb{S}_1(F) = F(E)$  for  $F \in \text{Lin}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Ab})$ .

**Definition 3.10.** The functor

$$\mathbb{T}_1 : \overline{A}\text{-Mod} \rightarrow \text{Lin}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$$

is defined by  $\mathbb{T}_1(M)(X) = T_1 U(X) \otimes_{\overline{A}} M$  for  $M \in \overline{A}\text{-Mod}$ .

The following proposition connects the functors  $\mathbb{S}_1$  and  $\mathbb{T}_1$ .

**Proposition 3.11.** *The functor  $\mathbb{T}_1$  is the left adjoint of  $\mathbb{S}_1$ .*

*The unit of this adjunction is the canonical isomorphism*

$$u_M : M \xrightarrow{\cong} \overline{A} \otimes_{\overline{A}} M = \mathbb{S}_1 \mathbb{T}_1(M) \quad \text{for } M \in \overline{A}\text{-Mod}.$$

*The co-unit is*

$$(u'_F)_X : \mathbb{T}_1 \mathbb{S}_1(F)(X) = T_1 U(X) \otimes_{\overline{A}} F(E) \rightarrow F(X),$$

where  $(u'_F)_X(t_1(f) \otimes x) = F(f)(x)$  for  $f \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$ , and  $x \in F(E)$ .

A classification of linear functors is now given as follows:

**Theorem 3.12.** *If  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$  then the functors  $\mathbb{S}_1$  and  $\mathbb{T}_1$  form a pair of adjoint equivalences.*

**Proof.** It remains to show that the co-unit is an isomorphism. For  $F \in \text{Lin}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  the source and target functors of  $u'_F$  are linear, so it suffices by Proposition 1.17 to prove that  $(u'_F)_E : \overline{A} \otimes_{\overline{A}} F(E) \rightarrow F(E)$  is an isomorphism. We have  $(u'_F)_E(t_1(f) \otimes x) = F(f)(x) = t_1(f).x$  so  $(u'_F)_E$  coincides with the canonical isomorphism.  $\square$

### 3.3. Classification of polynomial functors of arbitrary degree

Theorem 3.12 can be generalized to polynomial functors of arbitrary degree; this can be deduced from a more general result of Johnson and McCarthy on polynomial functors with values in categories of chain complexes [14,15], by identifying the category  $Ab$  with the category of chain complexes concentrated in a given degree.

**Theorem 3.13.** *Suppose that  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$ . Then the group  $T_n U_{E^{\vee n}}(E^{\vee n})$  has a ring structure induced by composition in  $\mathcal{C}$ , and there is an equivalence of categories*

$$\mathbb{S}_n : \text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, Ab)_{\leq n} \rightarrow T_n U_{E^{\vee n}}(E^{\vee n})\text{-Mod}$$

given by  $\mathbb{S}_n(F) = F(E^{\vee n})$ .

This result generalizes a similar one for additive categories  $\mathcal{C}$  due to Pirashvili [20]. A simple direct proof of Theorem 3.13 is given in [10]. Further study of polynomial functors could thus be based on this theorem in analyzing the — very complicated — structure of the rings  $T_n U_{E^{\vee n}}(E^{\vee n})$  and their representations; instead, we follow the basic idea of the work of Baues and Pirashvili: according to Proposition 1.17 a polynomial functor  $F$  of degree  $n$  is determined



by the values of its cross-effects  $cr_k(F)$  on  $(E, \dots, E)$ ,  $1 \leq k \leq n$ ; so we seek for minimal extra structure relating them so as to make the correspondence between polynomial functors and these enriched cross-effects into a functorial equivalence.

Inspired by the paper [19] we observe:

**Theorem 3.14.** (See [19].) For  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$ , the family of functors  $\{T_n U_{E^{\vee k}}, k \in \{1, \dots, n\}\}$  is a family of small projective generators of the category  $\text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)_{\leq n}$ .

This follows from the following proposition together with Proposition 1.4.

**Proposition 3.15** (Yoneda lemma for polynomial functors). Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a pointed category,  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  a polynomial functor of degree lower or equal to  $n$ . Then for  $X \in \text{Ob}(\mathcal{C})$  we have an isomorphism:

$$\mathcal{Y} : \text{Hom}_{\text{Func}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)_{\leq n}}(T_n U_X, F) \xrightarrow{\sim} F(X)$$

natural in  $F$  and  $X$ , defined by  $\mathcal{Y}(\varphi) = \varphi_X(1_X)$ .

This is an immediate consequence of Proposition 1.10 and the additive Yoneda lemma.

**Remark 3.16.** Pirashvili's Yoneda lemma for polynomial functors in [19] treats the case where  $\mathcal{C}$  is a category of modules over some ring  $R$ ; instead of the term  $T_n U_X$  in Proposition 3.15 it contains the term  $P_n(\text{Hom}_R(X, -))$ , cf. Section 2.3 for the definition of Passi's functor  $P_n$ . In fact, a generalization of results in Section 8 below shows that if  $X$  has a cogroup structure in  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the functors  $T_n U_X$  and  $P_n \circ \mathcal{C}(X, -)$  are isomorphic.

### 3.4. The case of bifunctors

Since cross-effects of quadratic functors are bilinear we need an analogue of Theorem 3.12 for bifunctors which goes as follows. Let  $\text{Bilin}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, Ab)$  denote the category of bilinear bireduced bifunctors from  $\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$ .

We begin by the following lemma.

**Lemma 3.17.** For  $B : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  a bilinear bireduced bifunctor,  $B(E, E)$  is a left  $\overline{\Lambda} \otimes \overline{\Lambda}$ -module via

$$(\overline{\alpha} \otimes \overline{\beta}).x := B(\alpha, \beta)(x)$$

for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$  and  $x \in B(E, E)$ .

**Remark 3.18.** Note that  $T_1 U(X) \otimes T_1 U(Y)$  is a right  $\Lambda \otimes \Lambda$ -module via  $(t_1(x) \otimes t_1(y))(\alpha \otimes \beta) = t_1(x\alpha) \otimes t_1(y\beta)$ ; this induces a structure of right  $\overline{\Lambda} \otimes \overline{\Lambda}$ -module.

**Definition 3.19.** The functor

$$\mathbb{S}_{11} : \text{Bilin}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, Ab) \rightarrow \overline{\Lambda} \otimes \overline{\Lambda}\text{-Mod}$$

is defined by  $\mathbb{S}_{11}(B) = B(E, E)$  for  $B \in \text{Bilin}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, Ab)$ .

**Definition 3.20.** The functor

$$\mathbb{T}_{11} : \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}\text{-Mod} \rightarrow \text{Bilin}(\mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}, Ab)$$

is defined by  $\mathbb{T}_{11}(M)(X, Y) = (T_1 U(X) \otimes T_1 U(Y)) \otimes_{A \otimes A} M$  for  $M \in \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}\text{-Mod}$ .

The following proposition connects the functors  $\mathbb{T}_{11}$  and  $\mathbb{S}_{11}$ .

**Proposition 3.21.** *The functor  $\mathbb{T}_{11}$  is the left adjoint of  $\mathbb{S}_{11}$ .*

*The unit of this adjunction is the canonical isomorphism*

$$u_M : M \rightarrow (T_1 U(E) \otimes T_1 U(E)) \otimes_{\bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}} M$$

defined by  $u_M(m) = (t_1(1) \otimes t_1(1)) \otimes m$  where  $M \in \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}\text{-Mod}$ .

*The co-unit is*

$$(u'_B)_{X,Y} : \mathbb{T}_{11}\mathbb{S}_{11}(B)(X, Y) = (T_1 U(X) \otimes T_1 U(Y)) \otimes_{\bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}} B(E, E) \rightarrow B(X, Y),$$

where  $(u'_B)_{X,Y}(t_1(f) \otimes t_1(g) \otimes x) = B(f, g)(x)$  for  $f \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$ ,  $g \in \mathcal{C}(E, Y)$  and  $x \in B(E, E)$ .

The arguments in the proof of Theorem 3.12 are easily adapted to obtain:

**Theorem 3.22.** *If  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$  then the functors  $\mathbb{S}_{11}$  and  $\mathbb{T}_{11}$  form a pair of adjoint equivalences.*

By Proposition 1.20 cross-effects are not only bifunctors but symmetric bifunctors. In the following we exploit this supplementary structure. We begin by recalling the definition of a symmetric  $R \otimes R$ -module.

**Definition 3.23.** For a ring  $R$ , a symmetric  $R \otimes R$ -module is a left  $R \otimes R$ -module  $M$  equipped with a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -linear involution  $T$  (i.e.  $T^2 = Id$ ) such that for  $r, s \in R$  and  $m \in M$

$$T((r \otimes s)m) = (s \otimes r)T(m).$$

A morphism of symmetric  $R \otimes R$ -modules is a morphism of  $R \otimes R$ -modules compatible with the respective involutions.

**Remark 3.24.** A symmetric  $R \otimes R$ -module is the same as a module over the wreath product

$$(R \otimes R) \wr \mathfrak{S}_2 = (R \otimes R) \oplus (R \otimes R).t$$

whose multiplication is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} & (r_1 \otimes r_2 + (s_1 \otimes s_2).t)(r'_1 \otimes r'_2 + (s'_1 \otimes s'_2).t) \\ &= (r_1 r'_1 \otimes r_2 r'_2 + s_1 s'_2 \otimes s_2 s'_1) + (r_1 s'_1 \otimes r_2 s'_2 + s_1 r'_2 \otimes s_2 r'_1).t \end{aligned}$$

for  $r_i, r'_i, s_i, s'_i \in R$  and where  $t$  denotes the generator of  $\mathfrak{S}_2$ .

Symmetric  $R \otimes R$ -modules naturally arise from evaluating symmetric bifunctors. Let  $V : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C}$  be the canonical interchange functor,  $V(X, Y) = (Y, X)$ .

**Proposition 3.25.** *Let  $(B, T)$  be a symmetric bifunctor from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$  such that  $B$  is bireduced. Then for  $E \in \mathcal{C}$ , the group  $B(E, E)$  is a symmetric  $\Lambda \otimes \Lambda$ -module where  $(f \otimes g)x = B(f, g)(x)$  for  $f, g \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$  and  $x \in B(E, E)$ , and with involution  $T_{E,E}$ .*

We thus obtain the following two examples of symmetric  $R \otimes R$ -modules for suitable  $R$  which are important in Section 5.

**Corollary 3.26.** *For a reduced functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$ , the group  $F(E|E)$  admits the structure of a symmetric  $\Lambda \otimes \Lambda$ -module such that for  $f, g \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$  and  $\alpha \in F(E|E)$  we have*

$$(f \otimes g).\alpha := F(f|g)(\alpha) \in F(E|E)$$

and with involution:

$$T^F(\alpha) = (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} F(\tau_{E,E}) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(\alpha) \in F(E|E).$$

**Corollary 3.27.** *For  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  a reduced functor, the group  $T_{11}(cr_2 F)(E, E)$  admits the structure of a symmetric  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -module, with involution denoted by  $\bar{T}^F$ , such that the projection  $t_{11} : F(E|E) \rightarrow T_{11}(cr_2 F)(E, E)$  is a morphism of symmetric  $\Lambda \otimes \Lambda$ -modules.*

Conversely, symmetric  $\Lambda \otimes \Lambda$ -modules give rise to symmetric bifunctors, as follows.

**Proposition 3.28.** *Let  $M$  be a symmetric  $\Lambda \otimes \Lambda$ -module with involution  $T$ . Then there are symmetric bifunctors  $(\mathbb{T}(M), T^M)$  and  $(\mathbb{T}_{11}(M), \bar{T}^M)$  where*

$$T_{X,Y}^M : (U(X) \otimes U(Y)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M \rightarrow (U(Y) \otimes U(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M$$

is given by  $T_{X,Y}^M(f \otimes g \otimes x) = g \otimes f \otimes Tx$  for  $f, g \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$  and  $x \in M$ , and where  $\bar{T}^M$  is given such that  $t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes id : \mathbb{T}(M) \rightarrow \mathbb{T}_{11}(M)$  is a morphism of symmetric bifunctors, in the obvious sense.

**Remark 3.29.** Similarly assigning  $(\mathbb{T}_{11}(M), \bar{T}^M)$  to  $(M, T)$  defines a functorial equivalence between symmetric  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -modules and symmetric bifunctors  $(B, T')$  from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$  such that  $B$  is bilinear bireduced, but we do not need this here.

#### 4. Equivalence between quadratic functors and modules over suitable ringoids

Let  $\text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  be the category of quadratic reduced functors from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$ . In this section,  $\mathcal{C}$  is supposed to be a small category. We generalize an approach of Pirashvili in [19] to obtain an equivalence between the category  $\text{Quad}(\langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}, Ab)$  and the category of modules over a particular pre-additive category (or ringoid following the terminology of Baues) with two objects. More explicitly we have:

**Definition 4.1.** Let  $\mathcal{R}$  be the ringoid having two objects  $R_e$  and  $R_{ee}$  and morphisms:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{R}}(R_e, R_{ee}) &= T_2 U_E(E|E), \\ \mathrm{Hom}_{\mathcal{R}}(R_{ee}, R_e) &= \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}, \\ \mathrm{End}_{\mathcal{R}}(R_e) &= \bar{\bar{A}} := (T_2 U_E)(E) \quad (\text{as a ring}), \\ \mathrm{End}_{\mathcal{R}}(R_{ee}) &= (\bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}) \wr \mathfrak{S}_2 \quad (\text{as a ring});\end{aligned}$$

the remaining compositions in  $\mathcal{R}$  are given as follows: for  $a, b, c, d, \alpha, \beta, \gamma \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ ,  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\xi} = \rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi)} & \\ t_2(\gamma) \circlearrowleft & R_e & \xrightarrow{\quad} R_{ee} \circlearrowright \bar{a} \otimes \bar{b} + t(\bar{c} \otimes \bar{d}) \\ & \xleftarrow{\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}} & \end{array}$$

$$t_2(\gamma) \circ (\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}) = \bar{\gamma} \bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\gamma} \bar{\beta}, \quad (4.1.1)$$

$$\rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi) \circ t_2(\gamma) = \rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi \gamma), \quad (4.1.2)$$

$$\rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi) \circ (\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}) = \overline{r_1 \xi \alpha} \otimes \overline{r_2 \xi \beta} + (\overline{r_1 \xi \beta} \otimes \overline{r_2 \xi \alpha}) t, \quad (4.1.3)$$

$$(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}) \circ \rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi) = t_2(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta) \xi - \alpha r_1 \xi - \beta r_2 \xi), \quad (4.1.4)$$

$$(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}) \circ (\bar{a} \otimes \bar{b} + (\bar{c} \otimes \bar{d}) t) = \bar{\alpha} \bar{a} \otimes \bar{\beta} \bar{b} + \bar{\beta} \bar{d} \otimes \bar{\alpha} \bar{c}, \quad (4.1.5)$$

$$(\bar{a} \otimes \bar{b} + (\bar{c} \otimes \bar{d}) t) \circ \tilde{\xi} = T_2 U_E(a|b)(\tilde{\xi}) + T_2 U_E(c|d)(T \tilde{\xi}), \quad (4.1.6)$$

where  $T$  is the involution of the symmetric  $\bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}$ -module  $T_2 U_E(E|E)$ .

It follows from Theorem 4.8 below that  $\mathcal{R}$  is a well defined ringoid.

**Theorem 4.2.** If  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$  we have an equivalence of categories:

$$\sigma : \mathrm{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab) \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathrm{Func}^{add}(\mathcal{R}, Ab) := \mathcal{R}\text{-mod}.$$

The proof of this theorem requires many intermediate results and will only be achieved at the end of Section 4.3 below.

#### 4.1. Projective generators of $\text{Quad}(\langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}, Ab)$

Applying Theorem 3.14 to quadratic functors we see that the category  $\text{Quad}(\langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}, Ab)$  admits  $\{T_2U_E, T_2U_{E \vee E}\}$  as a family of small projective generators. The following proposition gives a refinement of this result.

**Proposition 4.3.** *For  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$ , the category  $\text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  admits  $\{T_2U_E, T_1U_E \otimes T_1U_E\}$  as a family of small projective generators.*

The proof of this proposition relies on the following lemma.

**Lemma 4.4.** *We have a natural decomposition:*

$$U_{E \vee E} = U_E \oplus U_E \oplus U_E \otimes U_E.$$

**Proof.** Let  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  and  $f \in \mathcal{C}(E \vee E, X)$ , we define:

$$\sigma_X : U_{E \vee E}(X) \rightarrow U_E(X) \oplus U_E(X) \oplus U_E(X) \otimes U_E(X)$$

by:

$$\sigma_X(h) = (h \circ i_1, h \circ i_2, h \circ i_1 \otimes h \circ i_2)$$

for  $h \in \mathcal{C}(E \vee E, X)$  and

$$\tau_X : U_E(X) \oplus U_E(X) \oplus U_E(X) \otimes U_E(X) \rightarrow U_{E \vee E}(X)$$

by:

$$\tau_X(f, g, f' \otimes g') = fr_1 + gr_2 + \nabla^2(f' \vee g') - f'r_1 - g'r_2$$

for  $f, g, f', g' \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$ . We easily verify that  $\tau_X$  is the inverse of  $\sigma_X$  and these maps are natural.  $\square$

**Corollary 4.5.** *There is an isomorphism*

$$T_2U_{E \vee E} \simeq T_2U_E \oplus T_2U_E \oplus T_1U_E \otimes T_1U_E$$

where the injection and retraction  $T_1U_E \otimes T_1U_E \xrightleftharpoons[I]{R} T_2U_{E \vee E}$  are given by

$$\begin{aligned} I_X(\bar{f} \otimes \bar{g}) &= t_2(\nabla(f \vee g) - fr_1 - gr_2), \\ R_X(t_2(h)) &= \bar{h}i_1 \otimes \bar{h}i_2 \end{aligned}$$

for  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ ,  $f, g \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$  and  $h \in \mathcal{C}(E \vee E, X)$ .

**Proof.** We deduce from Lemma 4.4 that:

$$T_2 U_{E \vee E} = T_2 U_E \oplus T_2 U_E \oplus T_2 (U_E \otimes U_E).$$

But

$$\begin{aligned} T_2 (U_E \otimes U_E) &= T_{11} (U_E \boxtimes U_E) \Delta \quad \text{by Proposition 2.7} \\ &= (T_1 U_E \boxtimes T_1 U_E) \Delta \quad \text{by Example 1.15} \\ &= T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Proposition 4.3 now is a straightforward consequence of Theorem 3.14 and Corollary 4.5.

#### 4.2. Gabriel–Popescu theorem

Recall the following fundamental property of abelian categories:

**Theorem 4.6.** (See [22, Corollaire 6.4, p. 103].) *For any abelian category  $\mathcal{A}$  the following assertions are equivalent.*

- (1) *The category  $\mathcal{A}$  has arbitrary direct sums and  $\{P_i\}_{i \in I}$  is a set of projective small generators of  $\mathcal{A}$ .*
- (2) *The category  $\mathcal{A}$  is equivalent to the subcategory  $\text{Func}^{add}(\mathcal{P}^{op}, Ab)$  of  $\text{Func}(\mathcal{P}^{op}, Ab)$  whose objects are additive functors (i.e. functors satisfying  $F(f + g) = F(f) + F(g)$  where  $f$  and  $g$  are morphisms of  $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}^{op}}(V, W)$ ) and  $\mathcal{P}$  is the full subcategory of  $\mathcal{A}$  whose set of objects is  $\{P_i \mid i \in I\}$ .*

Combining Proposition 4.3 and Theorem 4.6 we obtain:

**Theorem 4.7.** *For  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$  and  $\mathcal{P}$  the full subcategory of  $\text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  having as objects  $T_2 U_E$  and  $T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E$ , we have an equivalence of categories:*

$$\alpha : \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab) \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{Func}^{add}(\mathcal{P}^{op}, Ab) := \mathcal{P}^{op}\text{-mod}$$

*assigning to a quadratic functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  the restriction to  $\mathcal{P}$  of the representable functor  $\text{Hom}_{\text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)}(-, F)$ .*

#### 4.3. The category $\mathcal{P}^{op}$

The aim of this section is to prove the following result:

**Theorem 4.8.** *We have an isomorphism of ringoids:*

$$\theta : \mathcal{P}^{op} \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathcal{R}$$

*given on the objects by:  $\theta(T_2 U_E) = R_e$  and  $\theta(T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E) = R_{ee}$ .*

In order to prove this theorem we need the following proposition.

**Proposition 4.9.** *For  $F \in \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Ab})$  there is an isomorphism  $\tilde{\mathcal{Y}}$  fitting into the commutative diagram:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}_{\text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Ab})}(T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E, F) & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\mathcal{Y}}} & F(E | E) \\ R^* \downarrow & & \downarrow \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \\ \text{Hom}_{\text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Ab})}(T_2 U_{E \vee E}, F) & \xrightarrow[\mathcal{Y}]{\cong} & F(E \vee E) \end{array}$$

where  $R : T_2 U_{E \vee E} \rightarrow T_1 U_E \times T_1 U_E$  is defined in Corollary 4.5.

**Proof.** By Corollary 4.5 we have a split exact sequence:

$$0 \longrightarrow T_2 U_E \oplus T_2 U_E \xrightarrow{(r_1^*, r_2^*)} T_2 U_{E \vee E} \xrightleftharpoons[I]{R} T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E \longrightarrow 0.$$

Applying  $\text{Hom}(-, F)$  and using naturality of  $\mathcal{Y}$  in the first variable provides the following commutative diagram with exact rows which implies the assertion.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 0 \longrightarrow & \text{Hom}(T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E, F) & \xrightarrow{R^*} & \text{Hom}(T_2 U_{E \vee E}, F) & \xrightarrow{((r_1^*)^*, (r_2^*)^*)} & \text{Hom}(T_2 U_E, F) \oplus \text{Hom}(T_2 U_E, F) & \longrightarrow 0 \\ & \downarrow \tilde{\mathcal{Y}} & & \downarrow \mathcal{Y} & & \downarrow \mathcal{Y} \oplus \mathcal{Y} & \\ 0 \longrightarrow & F(E | E) & \xrightarrow{\iota_{(1,2)}^2} & F(E \vee E) & \xrightarrow{(F(r_1), F(r_2))} & F(E) \oplus F(E) & \longrightarrow 0. \end{array} \quad \square$$

**Proof of Theorem 4.8.** We first determine the morphisms groups of the ringoid  $\mathcal{P}^{op}$ . The Yoneda Lemma 3.15 provides isomorphisms of groups:

$$\begin{aligned} \theta_1 &= \mathcal{Y} : \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}^{op}}(T_2 U_E, T_2 U_E) \xrightarrow{\cong} T_2 U_E(E) = \bar{\bar{A}}, \\ \theta_2 &= \mathcal{Y} : \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}^{op}}(T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E, T_2 U_E) \xrightarrow{\cong} T_1 U_E(E) \otimes T_1 U_E(E) = \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}. \end{aligned}$$

Proposition 4.9 furnishes isomorphisms of groups:

$$\begin{aligned} \theta_3 &= \tilde{\mathcal{Y}} : \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}^{op}}(T_2 U_E, T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E) \xrightarrow{\cong} T_2 U_E(E | E) \\ \tilde{\mathcal{Y}} &: \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}^{op}}(T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E, T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E) \xrightarrow{\cong} (T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E)(E | E). \end{aligned}$$

As  $T_1 U_E$  is linear, we have an isomorphism  $\tilde{\iota} : \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A} \oplus \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A} \rightarrow (T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E)(E | E)$  given by:  $\tilde{\iota}(\bar{a} \otimes \bar{b}, \bar{c} \otimes \bar{d}) = \bar{i}_1 \bar{a} \otimes \bar{i}_2 \bar{b} + \bar{i}_2 \bar{d} \otimes \bar{i}_1 \bar{c}$ . Thus we get an isomorphism of groups:

$$\theta_4 = \tilde{\iota}^{-1} \tilde{\mathcal{Y}} : \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{P}^{op}}(T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E, T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E) \xrightarrow{\cong} \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A} \oplus \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}.$$

Noting that  $\theta_1^{-1}(t_2 \alpha) = \alpha^*$  we see that  $\theta_1$  is a ring isomorphism. In order to compute the remaining composition laws in  $\mathcal{P}$ , we need the following technical lemma.

**Lemma 4.10.** Let  $n \geq 1$ , and for  $k = 1, 2$  let  $E_k \in \mathcal{C}$  and  $S_k : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ab}$  be a direct factor of  $T_n U_{E_k}$  with injection and retraction  $S_k \xrightleftharpoons[I_k]{R_k} T_n U_{E_k}$ . Furthermore, let  $F \in \text{Func}_*(\mathcal{C}, \text{Ab})_{\leq n}$  and  $S_1 \xrightarrow{\varphi_1} S_2 \xrightarrow{\varphi_2} F$  be natural transformations. Write  $x_1 = \mathcal{Y}R_1^*(\varphi_1) \in S_2(E_1)$  and  $x_2 = \mathcal{Y}R_2^*(\varphi_2) \in F(E_2)$  and let  $(I_2)_{E_1}(x_1) = \sum_j n_j t_n(\alpha_j)$  be a decomposition in  $T_n U_{E_2}(E_1)$  with  $n_j \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $\alpha_j \in \mathcal{C}(E_2, E_1)$ . Then

$$\mathcal{Y}R_1^*(\varphi_2\varphi_1) = \sum_j n_j F(\alpha_j)(x_2) \in F(E_1).$$

**Proof.** Let  $\tilde{\varphi}_1 = I_2\varphi_1 R_1 \in \text{Hom}(T_n U_{E_1}, T_n U_{E_2})$ . By naturality of  $\mathcal{Y}$  in the second variable we have

$$\mathcal{Y}(\tilde{\varphi}_1) = \mathcal{Y}I_{2*}(\varphi_1 R_1) = (I_2)_{E_1} \mathcal{Y}R_1^*(\varphi_1) = \sum_j n_j t_n(\alpha_j)$$

whence

$$\tilde{\varphi}_1 = \sum_j n_j t_n(\alpha_j)^* \quad (4.10.1)$$

since  $\mathcal{Y}(t_n(\alpha_j)^*) = t_n(\alpha_j)$ . Now consider the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Hom}(S_2, F) & \xrightarrow{\varphi_1^*} & \text{Hom}(S_1, F) \\ R_2^* \downarrow & & R_1^* \downarrow \\ \text{Hom}(T_n U_{E_2}, F) & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\varphi}_1^*} & \text{Hom}(T_n U_{E_1}, F) \\ \mathcal{Y} \downarrow \simeq & & \mathcal{Y} \downarrow \simeq \\ F(E_2) & \xrightarrow{\sum_j n_j F(\alpha_j)} & F(E_1). \end{array}$$

The upper square commutes by definition of  $\tilde{\varphi}_1$  while the lower square commutes by (4.10.1) and naturality of  $\mathcal{Y}$  in the first variable. The desired formula follows applying commutativity of the exterior rectangle to  $\varphi_2 \in \text{Hom}(S_2, F)$ .  $\square$

In a first step we postcompose endomorphisms of  $T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E$  by other maps in  $\mathcal{P}$ . By the isomorphisms  $\theta_4$  and  $\theta_3$  and by (2.13.6) it suffices to consider maps:



$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & & T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E \\
 & \nearrow^{\varphi_2} & \\
 T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E & \xrightarrow{\varphi_1} & T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E \\
 & \searrow_{\varphi'_2} & \\
 & & T_2 U_E
 \end{array}$$

such that:

$$\begin{aligned}
 x_k &= \mathcal{Y}R^*(\varphi_k) = \tilde{i}(\overline{a_k} \otimes \overline{b_k}, \overline{c_k} \otimes \overline{d_k}) \\
 &= \overline{i_1 a_k} \otimes \overline{i_2 b_k} + \overline{i_2 d_k} \otimes \overline{i_1 c_k} \in T_1 U_E(E \vee E) \otimes T_1 U_E(E \vee E)
 \end{aligned}$$

for  $k \in \{1, 2\}$  and  $a_k, b_k, c_k, d_k \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ , and such that:

$$x'_2 = \mathcal{Y}R^*(\varphi'_2) = \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi) = t_2(\xi - i_1 r_1 \xi - i_2 r_2 \xi) \in T_2 U_E(E \vee E)$$

for  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$ . Then:

$$\begin{aligned}
 I_{E \vee E}(x_1) &= t_2(\nabla(i_1 a_1 \vee i_2 b_1) - i_1 a_1 r_1 - i_2 b_1 r_2) + t_2(\nabla(i_2 d_1 \vee i_1 c_1) - i_2 d_1 r_1 - i_1 c_1 r_2) \\
 &= t_2(a_1 \vee b_1 - i_1 a_1 r_1 - i_2 b_1 r_2) + t_2((c_1 \vee d_1)\tau - i_2 d_1 r_1 - i_1 c_1 r_2).
 \end{aligned}$$

Applying Lemma 4.10 for  $E_1 = E_2 = E \vee E$ ,  $S_1 = S_2 = F = T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E$ ,  $R_1 = R_2 = R$  and  $I_1 = I_2 = I$  we get (omitting all terms being trivial since  $r_1 i_2 = 0 = r_2 i_1$ ):

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{Y}R^*(\varphi_2 \varphi_1) &= (t_1 \otimes t_1)((a_1 \vee b_1)i_1 a_2 \otimes (a_1 \vee b_1)i_2 b_2 + (a_1 \vee b_1)i_2 d_2 \otimes (a_1 \vee b_1)i_1 c_2 \\
 &\quad + (c_1 \vee d_1)\tau i_1 a_2 \otimes (c_1 \vee d_1)\tau i_2 b_2 + (c_1 \vee d_1)\tau i_2 d_2 \otimes (c_1 \vee d_1)\tau i_1 c_2) \\
 &= (t_1 \otimes t_1)(i_1 a_1 a_2 \otimes i_2 b_1 b_2 + i_2 b_1 d_2 \otimes i_1 a_1 c_2 + i_2 d_1 a_2 \otimes i_1 c_1 b_2 + i_1 c_1 d_2 \otimes i_2 d_1 c_2) \\
 &= \tilde{i}(t_1 \otimes t_1)(a_1 a_2 \otimes b_1 b_2 + c_1 d_2 \otimes d_1 c_2, a_1 c_2 \otimes b_1 d_2 + c_1 b_2 \otimes d_1 a_2) \\
 &= \tilde{i}((\overline{a_1} \otimes \overline{b_1}, \overline{c_1} \otimes \overline{d_1}) \star (\overline{a_2} \otimes \overline{b_2}, \overline{c_2} \otimes \overline{d_2}))
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $\star$  denotes the wreath product structure on  $\overline{A} \otimes \overline{A} \oplus \overline{A} \otimes \overline{A} = \overline{A} \otimes \overline{A} \oplus (\overline{A} \otimes \overline{A})t$ . This shows that  $\theta_4$  is a ring isomorphism:  $\theta_4 : \text{End}_{\mathcal{P}op}(T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E) \xrightarrow{\sim} (\overline{A} \otimes \overline{A}) \wr \mathfrak{S}_2$ . Next, again by Lemma 4.10 for  $E_1 = E_2 = E \vee E$ ,  $S_1 = S_2 = T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E$ ,  $F = T_2 U_E$ ,  $R_1 = R_2 = R$  and  $I_1 = I_2 = I$  and omitting all terms being trivial:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{Y}R^*(\varphi'_2 \varphi_1) &= T_2 U_E(a_1 \vee b_1)\iota_{(1,2)}^2 \rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi) + t_2(-i_1 a_1 r_1 \xi + i_1 a_1 r_1 \xi - i_2 b_1 r_2 \xi + i_2 b_1 r_2 \xi) \\
 &\quad + T_2 U_E(c_1 \vee d_1)T_2 U_E(\tau)\iota_{(1,2)}^2 \rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi) \\
 &\quad + t_2(-i_2 d_1 r_1 \xi + i_2 d_1 r_1 \xi - i_1 c_1 r_2 \xi + i_1 c_1 r_2 \xi) \\
 &= \iota_{(1,2)}^2 T_2 U_E(a_1 | b_1)\rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi) + \iota_{(1,2)}^2 T_2 U_E(c_1 | d_1)T\rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi)
 \end{aligned}$$

whence

$$\theta_3(\varphi_1^{op} \circ \varphi_2'^{op}) = \theta_4(\varphi_1^{op}) \circ \theta_3(\varphi_2'^{op}) \quad \text{by (4.1.6).}$$

Next consider maps

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & T_2 U_E \\ & \nearrow \varphi_2 & \\ T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E & \xrightarrow{\varphi_1} & T_2 U_E \\ & \searrow \varphi_2' & \\ & & T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E \end{array}$$

such that:

$$x_1 = \mathcal{Y}R^*(\varphi_1) = \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi) = t_2(\xi - i_1 r_1 \xi - i_2 r_2 \xi)$$

for  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$

$$x_2 = \mathcal{Y}(\varphi_2) = t_2(\alpha) \quad \text{and} \quad x_2' = \mathcal{Y}(\varphi_2') = \bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}$$

for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ ; again this suffices by (2.13.6). Applying Lemma 4.10 for  $E_1 = E \vee E$ ,  $E_2 = E$ ,  $S_1 = T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E$ ,  $S_2 = F = T_2 U_E$ ,  $R_1 = R$ ,  $I_1 = I$  and  $I_2 = R_2 = Id$  we get:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{Y}R^*(\varphi_2 \varphi_1) &= T_2 U_E(\xi)(t_2 \alpha) - T_2 U_E(i_1 r_1 \xi)(t_2 \alpha) - T_2 U_E(i_2 r_2 \xi)(t_2 \alpha) \\ &= t_2(\xi \alpha - i_1 r_1 \xi \alpha - i_2 r_2 \xi \alpha) \\ &= \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi \alpha) \end{aligned}$$

whence

$$\theta_3(\varphi_1^{op} \circ \varphi_2^{op}) = \theta_3(\varphi_1^{op}) \circ \theta_1(\varphi_2^{op}) \quad \text{by (4.1.2).}$$

Next applying Lemma 4.10 for  $E_1 = E \vee E$ ,  $E_2 = E$ ,  $S_1 = F = T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E$ ,  $S_2 = T_2 U_E$ ,  $R_1 = R$ ,  $I_1 = I$  and  $I_2 = R_2 = Id$  we get

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathcal{Y}R^*(\varphi_2' \varphi_1) \\ &= (T_1 U_E(\xi) \otimes T_1 U_E(\xi) - T_1 U_E(i_1 r_1 \xi) \otimes T_1 U_E(i_1 r_1 \xi) \\ &\quad - T_1 U_E(i_2 r_2 \xi) \otimes T_1 U_E(i_2 r_2 \xi))(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}) \\ &= (t_1 \otimes t_1)(\xi \alpha \otimes \xi \beta - i_1 r_1 \xi \alpha \otimes i_1 r_1 \xi \beta - i_2 r_2 \xi \alpha \otimes i_2 r_2 \xi \beta) \\ &= (t_1 \otimes t_1)((i_1 r_1 + i_2 r_2) \xi \alpha \otimes (i_1 r_1 + i_2 r_2) \xi \beta - i_1 r_1 \xi \alpha \otimes i_1 r_1 \xi \beta - i_2 r_2 \xi \alpha \otimes i_2 r_2 \xi \beta) \\ &\quad \text{by Lemma 3.6} \\ &= (t_1 \otimes t_1)(i_1 r_1 \xi \alpha \otimes i_2 r_2 \xi \beta + i_2 r_2 \xi \alpha \otimes i_1 r_1 \xi \beta) \\ &= \tilde{t}(r_1 \xi \alpha \otimes r_2 \xi \beta, r_1 \xi \beta \otimes r_2 \xi \alpha) \end{aligned}$$

whence

$$\theta_4(\varphi_1^{op} \circ \varphi_2'^{op}) = \theta_3(\varphi_1^{op}) \circ \theta_2(\varphi_2'^{op}) \quad \text{by (4.1.3).}$$

Now, consider diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & & T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E \\ & \nearrow \varphi_2 & \\ T_2 U_E & \xrightarrow{\varphi_1} & T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E \\ & \searrow \varphi_2' & \\ & & T_2 U_E \end{array}$$

such that:

$$x_1 = \mathcal{Y}(\varphi_1) = \bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \in \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}$$

$$x_2 = \mathcal{Y}R^*(\varphi_2) = i_1 a \otimes i_2 b + i_2 d \otimes i_1 c = \tilde{l}(a \otimes b, c \otimes d) \in T_1 U(E \vee E) \otimes T_1 U(E \vee E)$$

$$x_2' = \mathcal{Y}R^*(\varphi_2') = t_{(1,2)}^2 \rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi)$$

for  $\alpha, \beta, a, b, c, d \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$  and  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$ . We have:

$$I_E(x_1) = t_2(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta) - \alpha r_1 - \beta r_2).$$

Applying Lemma 4.10 for  $E_1 = E$ ,  $E_2 = E \vee E$ ,  $S_1 = T_2 U_E$ ,  $S_2 = F = T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E$ ,  $I_1 = R_1 = Id$ ,  $R_2 = R$  and  $I_2 = I$  we get:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{Y}(\varphi_2 \varphi_1) &= (T_1 U_E(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta)) \otimes T_1 U_E(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta)))(x_2) - (T_1 U_E(\alpha r_1) \otimes T_1 U_E(\alpha r_1))(x_2) \\ &\quad - (T_1 U_E(\beta r_2) \otimes T_1 U_E(\beta r_2))(x_2) \\ &= (t_1 \otimes t_1)(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta) i_1 a \otimes \nabla(\alpha \vee \beta) i_2 b + \nabla(\alpha \vee \beta) i_2 d \otimes \nabla(\alpha \vee \beta) i_1 c) \\ &= (t_1 \otimes t_1)(\alpha a \otimes \beta b + \beta d \otimes \alpha c). \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\theta_2(\varphi_1^{op} \circ \varphi_2'^{op}) = \theta_2(\varphi_1^{op}) \circ \theta_4(\varphi_2'^{op}) \quad \text{by (4.1.5).}$$

Applying Lemma 4.10 for  $E_1 = E$ ,  $E_2 = E \vee E$ ,  $S_1 = F = T_2 U_E$ ,  $S_2 = T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E$ ,  $I_1 = R_1 = Id$ ,  $R_2 = R$  and  $I_2 = I$  we get:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{Y}(\varphi_2' \varphi_1) &= T_2 U_E(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta))(t_2(\xi - i_1 r_1 \xi - i_2 r_2 \xi)) - T_2 U_E(\alpha r_1)(t_2(\xi - i_1 r_1 \xi - i_2 r_2 \xi)) \\ &\quad - T_2 U_E(\beta r_2)(t_2(\xi - i_1 r_1 \xi - i_2 r_2 \xi)) \\ &= t_2(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta) \xi - \alpha r_1 \xi - \beta r_2 \xi - \alpha r_1 \xi + \alpha r_1 \xi - \beta r_2 \xi + \beta r_2 \xi). \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\theta_1(\varphi_1^{op} \circ \varphi_2'^{op}) = \theta_2(\varphi_1^{op}) \circ \theta_3(\varphi_2'^{op}) \quad \text{by (4.1.4).}$$

Finally, let

$$T_2 U_E \xrightarrow{\varphi_1} T_2 U_E \xrightarrow{\varphi_2} T_1 U_E \otimes T_1 U_E$$

such that:

$$x_1 = \mathcal{Y}(\varphi_1) = t_2(\gamma) \quad \text{and} \quad x_2 = \mathcal{Y}(\varphi_2) = \bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}$$

for  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ . Then:

$$\mathcal{Y}(\varphi_2 \varphi_1) = (T_1 U_E(\gamma) \otimes T_1 U_E(\gamma))(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}) = \overline{\gamma \alpha} \otimes \overline{\gamma \beta}$$

whence

$$\theta_2(\varphi_1^{op} \circ \varphi_2^{op}) = \theta_1(\varphi_1^{op}) \circ \theta_2(\varphi_2^{op}) \quad \text{by (4.1.1).} \quad \square$$

**Proof of Theorem 4.2.** Combining Theorem 4.7 and Theorem 4.8 we obtain the result.  $\square$

**Remark 4.11.** Applying the ideas of this section to linear functors we find again Theorem 3.12 since, in this case, the full subcategory  $\mathcal{P}$  of  $\text{Lin}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  having the single object  $T_1 U_E$  is equivalent to the ring  $(\bar{\mathcal{A}})^{op} = \text{End}_{\mathcal{P}}(T_1 U_E)$ .

#### 4.4. The category $\mathcal{R}$ -mod

In this section, we give a reformulation of the structure of an  $\mathcal{R}$ -module that motivates the introduction of quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules in Section 5.

**Lemma 4.12.** An  $\mathcal{R}$ -module  $M : \mathcal{R} \rightarrow Ab$  is equivalent with the following data:

- (1) a left  $\bar{\bar{\mathcal{A}}}$ -module  $M_e$ ;
- (2) a symmetric  $\bar{\mathcal{A}} \otimes \bar{\mathcal{A}}$ -module  $M_{ee}$  (with involution denoted by  $T$ );
- (3) a map of  $\bar{\bar{\mathcal{A}}}$ -modules

$$p : (\bar{\mathcal{A}} \otimes \bar{\mathcal{A}}) \otimes_{(\bar{\mathcal{A}} \otimes \bar{\mathcal{A}}) \wr \mathfrak{S}_2} M_{ee} \rightarrow M_e$$

where the structure of right  $(\bar{\mathcal{A}} \otimes \bar{\mathcal{A}}) \wr \mathfrak{S}_2$ -module on  $\bar{\mathcal{A}} \otimes \bar{\mathcal{A}}$  is given by (4.1.5), and the structure of  $\bar{\bar{\mathcal{A}}}$ -module on  $\bar{\mathcal{A}} \otimes \bar{\mathcal{A}}$  is given by the diagonal action;

- (4) a map of symmetric  $\bar{\mathcal{A}} \otimes \bar{\mathcal{A}}$ -modules

$$h : T_2 U_E(E|E) \otimes_{\bar{\mathcal{A}}} M_e \rightarrow M_{ee}$$

such that for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ ,  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$ ,  $a \in M_e$  and  $m \in M_{ee}$  the following relations hold:

$$(RM1) \quad t_2(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta)\xi - \alpha r_1\xi - \beta r_2\xi)a = p(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \otimes h(\rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi) \otimes a)),$$

$$(RM2) \quad h(\rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi) \otimes p(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \otimes m)) = (\overline{r_1\xi\alpha} \otimes \overline{r_2\xi\beta})m + (r_1\xi\beta \otimes r_2\xi\alpha)Tm.$$

**Proof.** Given  $F \in \mathcal{R}\text{-mod}$ , let  $M_e = F(R_e)$ ,  $M_{ee} = F(R_{ee})$ ,  $p(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \otimes m) = F(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})(m)$  and  $h(\tilde{\xi} \otimes a) = F(\tilde{\xi})(a)$  where  $\tilde{\xi} = \rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi)$ . Then the relation (RM1) corresponds to the relation  $F((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}) \circ \tilde{\xi}) = F(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}) \circ F(\tilde{\xi})$ , in fact:

$$\begin{aligned} F((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})\tilde{\xi})(a) &= F(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta)\xi - \alpha r_1\xi - \beta r_2\xi)(a) \quad \text{by (4.1.4)} \\ &= t_2(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta)\xi - \alpha r_1\xi - \beta r_2\xi)a \end{aligned}$$

while

$$\begin{aligned} F(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}) \circ F(\tilde{\xi})(a) &= F(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})h(\tilde{\xi} \otimes a) \\ &= p(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \otimes h(\tilde{\xi} \otimes a)). \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, the relation (RM2) corresponds to the relation:  $F(\tilde{\xi} \circ (\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})) = F(\tilde{\xi}) \circ F(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})$ . In fact:

$$\begin{aligned} F(\tilde{\xi} \circ (\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta}))(m) &= F(\overline{r_1\xi\alpha} \otimes \overline{r_2\xi\beta} + (\overline{r_1\xi\beta} \otimes \overline{r_2\xi\alpha})t)(m) \\ &= (\overline{r_1\xi\alpha} \otimes \overline{r_2\xi\beta})m + (\overline{r_1\xi\beta} \otimes \overline{r_2\xi\alpha})Tm \end{aligned}$$

while

$$\begin{aligned} F(\tilde{\xi}) \circ F(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})(m) &= F(\tilde{\xi})p(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \otimes m) \\ &= h(\tilde{\xi} \otimes p(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \otimes m)). \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

## 5. Quadratic $\mathcal{C}$ -modules

In this section we introduce quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules which generalize to any pointed category  $\mathcal{C}$  the quadratic  $\mathbb{Z}$ -modules considered by Baues in [1] for  $\mathcal{C} = Ab$ . We show that quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules constitute a minimal description of  $\mathcal{R}$ -modules, and thus of reduced quadratic functors from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$  if  $\mathcal{C}$  is a theory generated by  $E$ . We make the functor from quadratic functors to quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules explicit; a canonical inverse functor, however, is more difficult to exhibit, and is provided in Section 6 by the construction of a quadratic tensor product.

### 5.1. Quadratic $\mathcal{C}$ -modules

**Definition 5.1** (Proto-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module). A proto-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module relative to  $E$  is a diagram of group homomorphisms:

$$M = (T_{11}(cr_2U)(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \xrightarrow{\hat{H}} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{T} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{P} M_e)$$

where

- $M_e$  is a left  $\Lambda$ -module;
- $M_{ee}$  is a symmetric  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -module with involution  $T$ ;
- $P : M_{ee} \rightarrow M_e$  is a homomorphism of  $\Lambda$ -modules with respect to the diagonal action of  $\Lambda$  on  $M_{ee}$ , i.e. for  $\alpha \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$  and  $m \in M_{ee}$ :

$$P((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\alpha})m) = \alpha P(m),$$

and satisfies  $PT = P$ ;

- $\hat{H}$  is a homomorphism of symmetric  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -modules such that for  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$  and  $a \in M_e$  the following relation holds:

$$(QM1) \quad (\nabla^2 \xi)a = (r_1^2 \xi)a + (r_2^2 \xi)a + P(\hat{H}(\overline{\rho_{12}^2(\xi)} \otimes a)).$$

**Remark 5.2.** By Proposition 2.14 condition (QM1) implies that  $\text{coker}(P)$  is a  $\bar{\Lambda}$ -module.

**Definition 5.3** (*Quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module*). A quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module (relative to  $E$ ) is a proto-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module (relative to  $E$ ) as above satisfying the additional property that for  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$  and  $m \in M_{ee}$

$$(QM2) \quad \hat{H}(\overline{\rho_{12}^2(\xi)} \otimes Pm) = (\overline{r_1^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{r_2^2 \xi})(m + Tm).$$

The intermediate notion of proto-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module is justified by the fact that it suffices to give rise to quadratic functors via the quadratic tensor product; however, we show in Theorem 6.17 below that a proto-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module satisfies relation (QM2) iff the cross-effect of the associated quadratic tensor product is  $\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})$ , see Theorem 3.22.

**Remark 5.4.** Suppose that  $E$  admits a comultiplication  $\mu : E \rightarrow E \vee E$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  admitting the zero map  $E \rightarrow 0$  as a co-unit. Write  $\mu' = (i_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1}(\mu - i_1^2 - i_2^2) \in cr_2 U(E, E)$  and  $\alpha \bullet \beta = (\alpha, \beta)\mu$  for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ . Then taking  $\xi = (\alpha \vee \beta)\mu$  relation (QM1) implies that

$$\begin{aligned} (\alpha \bullet \beta)a &= \alpha a + \beta a + P(\hat{H}(t_{11}(i_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1}((\alpha \vee \beta)\mu - (\alpha \vee \beta)i_1^2 - (\alpha \vee \beta)i_2^2) \otimes a)) \\ &= \alpha a + \beta a + P((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})\hat{H}(\overline{\mu'} \otimes a)) \end{aligned}$$

by  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -linearity of  $\hat{H}$ . This shows that (QM1) is a generalization of the distributivity law  $(\alpha + \beta)a = \alpha a + \beta a + P((\alpha \otimes \beta)H(a))$  in the case where  $\mathcal{C}$  is an additive category [1]. In particular,  $\hat{H}$  and  $P$  are generalizations of the second Hopf invariant and the Whitehead product  $[id, id]$ , respectively.

Moreover, taking  $\xi = \mu$  in relation (QM2) shows that under the above assumption  $T$  is determined by  $\hat{H}$  and  $P$ , as

$$\begin{aligned} T(m) &= \hat{H}(\overline{\rho_{12}^U(\mu)} \otimes Pm) - m \\ &= \hat{H}(\overline{\mu'} \otimes Pm) - m. \end{aligned}$$

This generalizes the formula  $T = HP - 1$  in [1,4], cf. the case where  $E$  is a cogroup considered in Section 7. In general, however,  $T$  is not determined by  $\hat{H}$  and  $P$ , as is illustrated by the following “extreme” example.

**Example 5.5.** Suppose that  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $E$  are such that  $\mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E) = i_{1*}^2 \mathcal{C}(E, E) \cup i_{2*}^2 \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ . In particular, this holds when  $\mathcal{C}$  is the category  $\Gamma$  of finite pointed sets and  $E = [1] = \{0, 1\}$  is its canonical generator. Then  $U(E|E) = 0$  by (2.13.7), whence  $\Lambda = \bar{\Lambda}$  and the domain of  $\hat{H}$  is trivial. Thus a quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module relative to  $E$  is a diagram

$$M = (M_{ee} \xrightarrow{T} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{P} M_e)$$

satisfying the properties in Definition 5.1 which do not involve  $\hat{H}$ ; in fact, the relations (QM1) and (QM2) are trivially satisfied. Together with Theorem 7.1 this reproduces a description of quadratic functors from  $\Gamma$  to  $Ab$  which is a particular case of results obtained in [21].

**Remark 5.6.** In view of the isomorphism in Proposition 2.16 the map  $\hat{H}$  in the definition of a (proto-)quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module can be replaced by a group homomorphism:

$$\tilde{H} : U(E \vee E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \rightarrow M_{ee}$$

satisfying the following relations for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ ,  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$ ,  $\gamma \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E \vee E)$ ,  $a \in M_e$ :

$$\begin{aligned} (H_1) \quad & \tilde{H}((\alpha \vee \beta)\xi \otimes a) = (\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})\tilde{H}(\xi \otimes a), \\ (H_2) \quad & \tilde{H}(\tau\xi \otimes a) = T\tilde{H}(\xi \otimes a), \\ (H_3) \quad & \tilde{H}(i_1^2\alpha \otimes a) = \tilde{H}(i_2^2\alpha \otimes a) = 0, \\ (H_4) \quad & \tilde{H}((\nabla^2 \vee Id - r_1^2 \vee Id - r_2^2 \vee Id)\gamma \otimes a) = 0, \\ (H_5) \quad & \tilde{H}((Id \vee \nabla^2 - Id \vee r_1^2 - Id \vee r_2^2)\gamma \otimes a) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

In fact,  $(H_1)$  translates the fact that  $\hat{H}$  is a morphism of  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -modules,  $(H_2)$  corresponds to the fact that  $\hat{H}$  is a morphism of symmetric modules, and  $(H_3)$ ,  $(H_4)$  and  $(H_5)$  correspond to the fact that the source of  $\hat{H}$  is  $(T_{11}(cr_2(U))(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e)$ , see Proposition 2.16.

In the following proposition we give a useful equivalent formulation of condition (QM1).

**Proposition 5.7.** Relation (QM1) means that the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M_{ee} & \xrightarrow{P} & M_e \\ \hat{H}(t_{11} \otimes 1) \uparrow & & \uparrow \mu_e \simeq \\ U(E|E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e & \xrightarrow[S_2^U \otimes 1]{} & U(E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \end{array}$$

where  $\mu_e$  is the canonical isomorphism and  $S_2^U$  the map given in Definition 1.8.

**Proof.** We have, for  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mu_e(S_2^U \otimes 1)(\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes a) &= \mu_e(U(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes a) \quad \text{by definition of } S_2^U \text{ in 1.8} \\
 &= \mu_e(U(\nabla^2)(Id - i_{1*}^2 \circ r_{1*}^2 - i_{2*}^2 \circ r_{2*}^2)(\xi) \otimes a) \quad \text{by (2.13.5)} \\
 &= \mu_e((U(\nabla^2)(\xi) - r_{1*}^2(\xi) - r_{2*}^2(\xi)) \otimes a) \\
 &= \mu_e((\nabla^2 \xi - r_1^2 \xi - r_2^2 \xi) \otimes a) \\
 &= (\nabla^2 \xi)a - (r_1^2 \xi)a - (r_2^2 \xi)a.
 \end{aligned}$$

So the diagram commutes if and only if for all  $\xi$  and  $a$

$$P(\hat{H}(\overline{\rho_{12}^2(\xi)} \otimes a)) = (\nabla^2 \xi)a - (r_1^2 \xi)a - (r_2^2 \xi)a. \quad \square$$

**Definition 5.8** (*Morphisms of (proto)-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules*). A morphism  $\phi : M \rightarrow M'$  of (proto)-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules relative to  $E$  is a pair  $\phi = (\phi_e, \phi_{ee})$  where  $\phi_e : M_e \rightarrow M'_e$  is a morphism of  $\Lambda$ -modules and  $\phi_{ee} : M_{ee} \rightarrow M'_{ee}$  is a morphism of symmetric  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -modules which commute with the structure maps  $\hat{H}$ ,  $T$  and  $P$ .

Composition of morphisms of (proto)-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules is defined in the obvious way. This allows to give the following definition.

**Definition 5.9.** The category  $PQ\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$  (resp.  $Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$ ) is the category having as objects the proto-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules (resp. quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules) and as maps the morphisms of proto-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules (resp. quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules).

**Remark 5.10.** There is a fully-faithful functor  $I_1 : \bar{\Lambda}\text{-Mod} \rightarrow Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$  given by

$$I_1(M) = (T_{11}(cr_2 U)(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M \xrightarrow{\hat{H}} 0 \xrightarrow{T} 0 \xrightarrow{P} M).$$

In fact,  $I_1(M)$  satisfies  $(QM1)$  as  $M$  is a  $\bar{\Lambda}$ -module, and  $(QM2)$  is trivial.

## 5.2. Equivalence between $\mathcal{R}$ -modules and quadratic $\mathcal{C}$ -modules

The aim of this section is to prove the equivalence between  $\mathcal{R}$ -modules and quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules. We begin by recalling the following notation.

**Notation 5.11.** If  $M$  is an abelian group equipped with an involution  $t$ , we denote by  $M_{\mathfrak{S}_2}$  the coinvariants of the action of the symmetric group  $\mathfrak{S}_2$  on  $M$  given by  $t$ , i.e.  $M_{\mathfrak{S}_2} = M/(1-t)M$ . Furthermore, we denote by  $\pi : M \rightarrow M_{\mathfrak{S}_2}$  the canonical projection.

**Lemma 5.12.** Let  $M$  be a symmetric  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -module with involution  $T$ . There is a natural isomorphism of groups:

$$\chi : (\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}) \otimes_{(\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda})_{\mathfrak{S}_2}} M \rightarrow M_{\mathfrak{S}_2}$$



defined by:

$$\chi(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \otimes m) = \pi((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})m).$$

**Proof.**  $\chi$  is well defined since

$$\begin{aligned} \chi((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})(\bar{a} \otimes \bar{b} + (\bar{c} \otimes \bar{d})t) \otimes m) &= \chi((\bar{\alpha}\bar{a} \otimes \bar{\beta}\bar{b} + \bar{\beta}\bar{d} \otimes \bar{\alpha}\bar{c}) \otimes m) \quad \text{by (4.1.5)} \\ &= \pi((\bar{\alpha}\bar{a} \otimes \bar{\beta}\bar{b})m) + \pi((\bar{\beta}\bar{d} \otimes \bar{\alpha}\bar{c})m) \\ &= \pi((\bar{\alpha}\bar{a} \otimes \bar{\beta}\bar{b})m) + \pi(T(\bar{\beta}\bar{d} \otimes \bar{\alpha}\bar{c})m) \\ &= \pi((\bar{\alpha}\bar{a} \otimes \bar{\beta}\bar{b})m) + \pi((\bar{\alpha}\bar{c} \otimes \bar{\beta}\bar{d})Tm) \\ &= \pi((\bar{\alpha}\bar{a} \otimes \bar{\beta}\bar{b} + (\bar{\alpha}\bar{c} \otimes \bar{\beta}\bar{d})t)m) \\ &= \pi((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})(\bar{a} \otimes \bar{b} + (\bar{c} \otimes \bar{d})t)m) \quad \text{by (4.1.5)} \\ &= \chi(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \otimes (\bar{a} \otimes \bar{b} + (\bar{c} \otimes \bar{d})t)m). \end{aligned}$$

Let  $\chi' : M \rightarrow (\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}) \otimes_{(\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}) \wr \mathfrak{S}_2} M$  given by:  $\chi'(m) = \bar{1} \otimes \bar{1} \otimes m$ . Then:

$$\begin{aligned} \chi'(Tm) &= \bar{1} \otimes \bar{1} \otimes Tm \\ &= \bar{1} \otimes \bar{1} \otimes ((\bar{1} \otimes \bar{1})tm) \\ &= (\bar{1} \otimes \bar{1})(\bar{1} \otimes \bar{1})t \otimes m \\ &= (\bar{1} \otimes \bar{1}) \otimes m \quad \text{by (4.1.5)} \\ &= \chi'(m) \end{aligned}$$

whence  $\chi'$  factors through  $M_{\mathfrak{S}_2}$  and provides an inverse map of  $\chi$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 5.13.** *There is an equivalence of categories  $\vartheta : \mathcal{R}\text{-mod} \rightarrow Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$  defined, using Lemma 4.12, by*

$$\vartheta(M) = (T_{11}(cr_2U)(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \xrightarrow{\hat{H}} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{T} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{P} M_e)$$

where  $\hat{H} = h \circ \overline{(cr_2(t_2))} \otimes 1$  and where  $P = \bar{P}\pi$  with  $\bar{P} : (M_{ee})_{\mathfrak{S}_2} \rightarrow M_e$  such that  $\bar{P}\chi = p$ .

The proof of this theorem relies on the following lemma.

**Lemma 5.14.** *Let  $M \in P Q \text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$ . Then the  $\Lambda$ -module structure on  $M_e$  factors through  $\bar{\Lambda}$ .*

**Proof.** Let  $\varphi : \Lambda \rightarrow \text{End}(M_e)$ ,  $\varphi(\lambda)(a) = \lambda a$  for  $(\lambda, a) \in \Lambda \times M_e$ . Then for  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$ , we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
cr_2(\varphi)\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi)(a) &= (\nabla\xi)a - (r_1\xi)a - (r_2\xi)a \\
&= P\hat{H}(t_{11}\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes a) \quad \text{by } (QM1) \\
&= \tilde{\varphi}(t_{11}\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi))(a)
\end{aligned}$$

where  $\tilde{\varphi} : T_{11}cr_2U(E, E) \rightarrow \text{End}(M_e)$  is given by

$$\tilde{\varphi}(x)(a) = P\hat{H}(x \otimes a).$$

Thus,  $cr_2(\varphi) = \tilde{\varphi}t_{11}$ , whence  $\varphi$  is a quadratic map (cf. Section 2.3). Now the assertion follows from Proposition 2.10.  $\square$

**Proof of Theorem 5.13.** Let  $M_e$  be a  $\Lambda$ -module and  $M_{ee}$  be a symmetric  $\overline{\Lambda} \otimes \overline{\Lambda}$ -module. First note that by Lemma 5.14,  $M_e$  actually is a  $\overline{\Lambda}$ -module if  $M_e$  and  $M_{ee}$  are part of a quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module. In view of Lemma 5.12, the data of a morphism of  $\overline{\Lambda}$ -module  $p$  is equivalent with the data of a  $\Lambda$ -equivariant morphism  $P : M_{ee} \rightarrow M_e$  such that  $PT = P$ . Moreover, a morphism of symmetric  $\overline{\Lambda} \otimes \overline{\Lambda}$ -modules  $h : T_2U(E | E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \rightarrow M_{ee}$  is equivalent with a morphism of symmetric  $\overline{\Lambda} \otimes \overline{\Lambda}$ -modules  $\hat{H} : T_{11}(cr_2U)(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \rightarrow M_{ee}$  in view of the isomorphism of symmetric bifunctors:

$$\overline{cr_2(t_2)} : T_{11}(cr_2U_E) \rightarrow cr_2(T_2U_E)$$

given in Theorem 2.5. Thus it remains to show that for  $k = 1, 2$  the relations  $(RMk)$  and  $(QMk)$  are equivalent. This is based on the following relations for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ ,  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$ .

$$i_{(1,2)}^2\rho_{(1,2)}^2((\alpha \vee \beta)\xi) = (\alpha \vee \beta)\xi - i_1r_1(\alpha \vee \beta)\xi - i_2r_2(\alpha \vee \beta)\xi \quad (5.14.1)$$

$$= (\alpha \vee \beta)\xi - i_1\alpha r_1\xi - i_2\beta r_2\xi \quad (5.14.2)$$

$$= (\alpha \vee \beta)\xi - (\alpha \vee \beta)i_1r_1\xi - (\alpha \vee \beta)i_2r_2\xi \quad (5.14.3)$$

$$= U_E(\alpha \vee \beta)i_{(1,2)}^2\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \quad (5.14.4)$$

$$= i_{(1,2)}^2U_E(\alpha|\beta)\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi). \quad (5.14.5)$$

Now consider  $(RM1)$ . On the one hand, we have

$$t_2(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta)\xi - \alpha r_1\xi - \beta r_2\xi)x = t_2(\nabla(\alpha \vee \beta)\xi - r_1(\alpha \vee \beta)\xi - r_2(\alpha \vee \beta)\xi)x.$$

On the other hand:

$$\begin{aligned}
p(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \otimes h(\rho_{(1,2)}^2t_2(\xi) \otimes x)) &= P((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})h(t_2\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes x)) \\
&= Ph(T_2U_E(\alpha|\beta)t_2\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes x)
\end{aligned}$$

since  $h$  is  $(\overline{\Lambda} \otimes \overline{\Lambda}) \wr \mathfrak{S}_2$ -equivariant, and by (4.1.6); thus

$$p(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \otimes h(\rho_{(1,2)}^2t_2(\xi) \otimes x)) = P\hat{H}(t_{11}\rho_{(1,2)}^2((\alpha \vee \beta)\xi) \otimes x) \quad \text{by } (5.14.5).$$

Hence (RM1) is equivalent with (QM1). To see the equivalence between (RM2) and (QM2), just note that:

$$h(\rho_{(1,2)}^2 t_2(\xi) \otimes p(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta} \otimes m)) = \hat{H}(t_{11} \rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes P((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})m))$$

while

$$\begin{aligned} & (\overline{r_1 \xi \alpha} \otimes \overline{r_2 \xi \beta})m + (\overline{r_1 \xi \beta} \otimes \overline{r_2 \xi \alpha})Tm \\ &= (\overline{r_1 \xi} \otimes \overline{r_2 \xi})(\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})m + (\overline{r_1 \xi} \otimes \overline{r_2 \xi})T((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})m). \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

### 5.3. Quadratic $\mathcal{C}$ -modules obtained from quadratic functors

We here provide an explicit construction of the composite functor

$$\mathbb{S}_2 : \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab) \xrightarrow{\sigma} \mathcal{R}\text{-mod} \xrightarrow{\vartheta} Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E.$$

**Lemma 5.15.** *For  $F \in \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  there exists a natural transformation of functors  $H^F : (T_{11}(cr_2 U) \otimes_{\Lambda} F(E))\Delta_{\mathcal{C}} \rightarrow (cr_2 F)\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}$  such that the following natural diagram is commutative for  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ :*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T_{11}(cr_2 U)(X, X) \otimes_{\Lambda} F(E) & \xrightarrow{(H^F)_X} & F(X|X) \\ & \nwarrow (t_{11} \otimes 1)_X \quad \nearrow (cr_2(u'_F))_X & \\ & U(X|X) \otimes_{\Lambda} F(E). & \end{array}$$

**Proof.** Recall that the cross-effect of a quadratic functor is a bilinear bifunctor. Hence the existence of  $H^F$  follows from the universal property of  $t_{11}$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 5.16.** *For  $F \in \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  we have*

$$\mathbb{S}_2(F) = (T_{11}(cr_2 U)(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} F(E) \xrightarrow{(H^F)_E} F(E|E) \xrightarrow{T^F} F(E|E) \xrightarrow{(S_2^F)_E} F(E)).$$

Checking this is straightforward going through the various definitions involved in the construction of  $\sigma$  and  $\vartheta$ .

The following proposition formalizes the fact that  $\mathbb{S}_2$  extends the functor  $\mathbb{S}_1$ .

**Proposition 5.17.** *The following diagram is commutative*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab) & \xrightarrow{\mathbb{S}_2} & Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow I_1 \\ \text{Lin}(\mathcal{C}, Ab) & \xrightarrow{\mathbb{S}_1} & \overline{\Lambda}\text{-Mod} \end{array}$$

where  $I_1$  is the functor defined in Remark 5.10.

## 6. Quadratic tensor product

The left adjoint of the functor  $\mathbb{S}_2 : \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab) \rightarrow Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$  is given by a construction which we call the quadratic tensor product. In fact, a special case of a quadratic tensor product first appeared in [1]: it there provides a left adjoint of a functor  $\text{Quad}(Ab, Ab) \rightarrow Q\text{Mod}(\mathbb{Z})$ , where  $Q\text{Mod}(\mathbb{Z})$  is the category of quadratic  $\mathbb{Z}$ -modules. This functor is defined explicitly by generators and relations. Similarly, in [4] a left adjoint of  $\text{Quad}(Gr, Gr) \rightarrow \text{Square}$  is constructed by generators and relations; here Square is the category of square groups (see also Section 8.8). In this paper, however, we give a more conceptual construction of the quadratic tensor product, by means of a push-out diagram, in our general setting. We expect to generalize this construction to polynomial functors of higher degree. A description of our quadratic tensor product in terms of generators and relations is also provided, which generalizes the constructions in [1] and [4]. We then compute the quadratic tensor product  $E \otimes M$  for  $M \in Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$  and the cross-effect of  $- \otimes M$  which are two essential tools in the proof of our main theorem in Section 7.

### 6.1. Definition

We start with the following straightforward lemma.

**Lemma 6.1.** *If  $N$  is a symmetric  $\Lambda \otimes \Lambda$ -module with involution  $T$  and  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ , the group  $M = ((T_1U)(X) \otimes (T_1U)(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} N$  is equipped with an involution  $t$  defined by*

$$t(x \otimes y \otimes n) = y \otimes x \otimes T(n)$$

for  $x, y \in (T_1U)(X)$  and  $n \in N$ .

To define the quadratic tensor product, we need to consider the coinvariants by the action of the symmetric group  $\mathfrak{S}_2$ .

**Definition 6.2 (Quadratic tensor product).** Let  $M$  be a proto-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module relative to  $E$  and  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ . The quadratic tensor product  $X \otimes M \in Ab$  is defined by the following push-out diagram of abelian groups:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} ((U(X) \otimes U(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} U(E|E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e) \oplus (U(X) \otimes M_{ee}) & \xrightarrow{\phi=(\phi_1, t_2 \otimes P)} & (T_2U)(X) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \\ \psi=(\psi_1, \pi(\delta \otimes 1)) \downarrow & & \downarrow \hat{\psi} \\ (((T_1U)(X) \otimes (T_1U)(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee})_{\mathfrak{S}_2} & \xrightarrow{\hat{\phi}} & X \otimes M \end{array}$$

where  $\psi_1 = \pi(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes \hat{H}(t_{11} \otimes 1))$ ,  $\delta(f) = (t_1 f) \otimes (t_1 f)$  for  $f \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$  and  $\phi_1(f \otimes g \otimes x \otimes a) = t_2 S_2^U U(f|g)(x) \otimes a$  for  $f, g \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$ ,  $x \in U(E|E)$  and  $a \in M_e$ .

In the following proposition we give a description of the quadratic tensor product  $X \otimes M$  by generators and relations.

**Proposition 6.3.** *Let  $M$  be a proto-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module relative to  $E$  and  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ . The quadratic tensor product  $X \otimes M \in \text{Ab}$  is the abelian group generated by the symbols*

$$f \otimes a, \quad f \in \mathcal{C}(E, X), \quad a \in M_e,$$

$$[f, g] \otimes m, \quad f, g \in \mathcal{C}(E, X), \quad m \in M_{ee}$$

subject to the following relations:

- (1)  $(f\beta) \otimes a = f \otimes (\beta a)$  for  $\beta \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ ;
- (2)  $f \otimes (a + b) = f \otimes a + f \otimes b$ ,
- (3)  $(1, 1, 1)\xi \otimes a - (1, 1, 0)\xi \otimes a - (1, 0, 1)\xi \otimes a - (0, 1, 1)\xi \otimes a + (1, 0, 0)\xi \otimes a + (0, 1, 0)\xi \otimes a + (0, 0, 1)\xi \otimes a = 0$  for  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, X \vee X \vee X)$ ;
- (4)  $[f\alpha, g\beta] \otimes m = [f, g] \otimes (\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})m$  for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ ;
- (5)  $[f, g] \otimes (m + n) = [f, g] \otimes m + [f, g] \otimes n$ ;
- (6)  $[\nabla_*^2(\xi), g] \otimes m = [r_{1*}^2(\xi), g] \otimes m + [r_{2*}^2(\xi), g] \otimes m$  for  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, X \vee X)$ ;
- (7)  $[f, g] \otimes m = [g, f] \otimes T(m)$ ;
- (8)  $[f, f] \otimes m = f \otimes P(m)$ ;
- (9)  $(f, g)\gamma \otimes a = fr_1^2\gamma \otimes a + gr_2^2\gamma \otimes a + [f, g] \otimes \hat{H}(t_{11}\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\gamma) \otimes a)$  for  $\gamma \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$ .

**Proof.** The symbol  $f \otimes a$  corresponds to a generator of  $U(X) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e$  and  $[f, g] \otimes m$  corresponds to a generator of  $(U(X) \otimes_{\Lambda} U(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee}$ .

For the elements  $f \otimes a$ , relation (1) corresponds to the fact that the tensor product is taken over  $\Lambda$ , (2) translates the linearity in  $M_e$ , (3) corresponds to the fact that the element  $f \otimes a$  is in  $T_2U(X) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e$  where we use Proposition 2.17 which describes  $T_2F$  as a quotient of  $F$ .

For the elements  $[f, g] \otimes m$ , (4) corresponds to the fact that the tensor product is taken over  $\Lambda \otimes \Lambda$ , (5) translates the linearity in  $M_{ee}$ , (6) (also using (7)) corresponds to the fact that the element  $[f, g] \otimes m$  lies in  $((T_1U)(X) \otimes (T_1U)(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee}$ , and (7) translates the fact that we take the coinvariants by the action of  $\mathfrak{S}_2$ .

Finally, (8) and (9) correspond to the fact that  $X \otimes M$  is defined by the pushout of the maps  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  in Definition 6.2.  $\square$

We need the following technical lemma.

**Lemma 6.4.** *The quadratic tensor product  $X \otimes M$  is equal to the pushout  $\Pi$  of the following diagram of abelian groups*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 ((T_1UX \otimes T_1UX) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} T_{11}(cr_2U)(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e) \otimes_{\mathfrak{S}_2} (UX \otimes M_{ee}) & \xrightarrow{\bar{\phi} = (\overline{\phi'_1 \otimes 1}, t_2 \otimes P)} & T_2UX \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \\
 \downarrow \bar{\psi} = (\overline{\psi_1}, \pi(\delta \otimes 1)) & & \downarrow \hat{\psi} \\
 ((T_1UX \otimes T_1UX) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee}) \otimes_{\mathfrak{S}_2} & \xrightarrow{\phi} & \Pi
 \end{array}$$

where  $UX := U(X)$ ,  $T_i UX := T_i U(X)$  for  $i \in \{1, 2\}$ ,  $\overline{\psi_1} = \overline{1 \otimes 1 \otimes \hat{H}}$  and  $\phi'_1$  is the following composite map:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (T_1 U(X) \otimes T_1 U(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} T_{11}(cr_2 U)(E, E) & \xrightarrow{\phi'_1} & T_2 U(X) \\ \downarrow 1 \otimes 1 \otimes \overline{cr_2(t_2)} & & \uparrow S_2^{T_2 U} \\ (T_1 U(X) \otimes T_1 U(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} cr_2(T_2 U)(E, E) & \xrightarrow{u'_{cr(T_2 U)}} & cr_2(T_2 U)(X, X). \end{array}$$

**Proof.** We have the following surjection

$$(UX \otimes UX) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} U(E|E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \xrightarrow{\pi(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes t_{11} \otimes 1)} ((T_1 U)X \otimes (T_1 U)X) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} T_{11}(cr_2 U)(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e)_{\mathfrak{S}_2}$$

which verifies

$$\psi_1 = \pi(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes \hat{H}(t_{11} \otimes 1)) = \pi(1 \otimes 1 \otimes \hat{H})(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes t_{11} \otimes 1).$$

We first check that  $\phi_1 = (\phi'_1 \otimes 1)(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes t_{11} \otimes 1)$ . For  $f, g \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$  and  $x \in U(E|E)$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi'_1(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes t_{11})(f \otimes g \otimes x) &= S_2^{T_2 U} u'_{cr_2(T_2 U)}(1 \otimes 1 \otimes \overline{cr_2(t_2)})(t_1(f) \otimes t_1(g) \otimes t_{11}(x)) \\ &= S_2^{T_2 U} cr_2(T_2 U)(f, g) cr_2(t_2)(x) \quad \text{by definition of } u'_{cr_2(T_2 U)} \\ &= (T_2 U)(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2(T_2 U)(f, g) cr_2(t_2)(x) \quad \text{by definition of } S_2^{T_2 U} \\ &= (T_2 U)(\nabla^2)(T_2 U)(f \vee g) t_2 \iota_{(1,2)}^2(x) \\ &= t_2 U(\nabla^2) U(f \vee g) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(x) \\ &= t_2 U(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 U(f|g)(x) \\ &= t_2 S_2^U U(f|g)(x). \end{aligned}$$

It remains to check that  $\phi'_1$  factors through the coinvariants, that is  $\phi'_1(t_1(f) \otimes t_1(g) \otimes t_{11}x) = \phi'_1(t(t_1(f) \otimes t_1(g) \otimes t_{11}x))$ . We have:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi'_1(t(t_1(f) \otimes t_1(g) \otimes t_{11}x)) &= \phi'_1(t_1(g) \otimes t_1(f) \otimes t_{11}(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} U(\tau) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 x) \\ &= t_2 S_2^U U(g|f) (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} U(\tau) (\iota_{(1,2)}^2 x) \quad \text{by the previous calculation} \\ &= t_2 U(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 U(g|f) (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} U(\tau) (\iota_{(1,2)}^2 x) \\ &= t_2 U(\nabla^2) U(g \vee f) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} U(\tau) (\iota_{(1,2)}^2 x) \\ &= t_2 U(\nabla^2) U(g \vee f) U(\tau) (\iota_{(1,2)}^2 x) \\ &= t_2 U(\nabla^2) U(\tau) U(f \vee g) (\iota_{(1,2)}^2 x) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= t_2 U(\nabla^2 \tau) U(f \vee g)(\iota_{(1,2)}^2 x) \\
 &= t_2 U(\nabla^2) U(f \vee g)(\iota_{(1,2)}^2 x) \\
 &= t_2 U(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 U(f|g)(x) \\
 &= t_2 S_2^U U(f|g)(x) \\
 &= \phi'_1(t_1(f) \otimes t_1(g) \otimes t_{11}x). \quad \square
 \end{aligned}$$

## 6.2. The quadratic tensor product defines a quadratic functor

The aim of this section is to prove the following result.

**Proposition 6.5.** *For  $M \in PQ \text{Mod}_C^E$  the functor given by the quadratic tensor product:  $- \otimes M : C \rightarrow Ab$  is a quadratic functor.*

The proof of this proposition relies on the following lemma.

**Lemma 6.6.** *For  $M$  a proto-quadratic  $C$ -module, the following natural transformation of functors from  $C$  to  $Ab$  is surjective:*

$$cr_2(\hat{\phi}) : cr_2((((T_1 U(-) \otimes T_1 U(-)) \otimes_{A \otimes A} M_{ee}) \Delta_C)_{\mathfrak{S}_2}) \rightarrow cr_2(- \otimes M);$$

here  $\hat{\phi}$  is the map in the push-out diagram in Definition 6.2.

**Remark 6.7.** In Theorem 6.17 below we give an improved version of this lemma.

**Proof of Lemma 6.6.** To simplify notation we write  $\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})\Delta_C$  instead of  $((T_1 U(-) \otimes T_1 U(-)) \otimes_{A \otimes A} M_{ee})\Delta_C$ . Recall that the functor  $\mathbb{T}_{11}$  is the functor defined in 3.20.

By the universal property of a push-out, we obtain the existence of a map  $f : X \otimes M \rightarrow \text{coker}(\phi)$  making the following diagram of abelian groups commutative:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 (UX \otimes UX) \otimes_{A \otimes A} U(E|E) \otimes_A M_e \oplus UX \otimes M_{ee} & \xrightarrow{\phi} & (T_2 U)(X) \otimes_A M_e \\
 \downarrow \psi & & \downarrow \hat{\psi} \\
 (((T_1 U)(X) \otimes (T_1 U)(X)) \otimes_{A \otimes A} M_{ee})_{\mathfrak{S}_2} & \xrightarrow{\hat{\phi}} & X \otimes M \\
 & \searrow \hat{\phi} & \searrow f \\
 & 0 & \text{coker}(\phi).
 \end{array}$$

We deduce the existence of a natural exact sequence

$$(\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})\Delta_C)_{\mathfrak{S}_2}(X) \xrightarrow{\hat{\phi}} X \otimes M \xrightarrow{f} \text{coker}(\phi) \rightarrow 0. \quad (6.7.1)$$

In the sequel we show that the functor  $\text{coker}(\phi)$  is linear. Recall that  $\phi_1 = \phi'_1(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes t_{11}) \otimes 1$  where  $(\phi'_1(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes t_{11}))_X$  is given by the following composition:

$$(U(X) \otimes U(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} U(E|E) \xrightarrow{\alpha} cr_2(T_2U)(X, X) \xrightarrow{(S_2^{T_2U})_X} (T_2U)(X)$$

where  $\alpha = (u'_{cr_2(T_2U)})_{X,X}(1 \otimes 1 \otimes \overline{cr_2(t_2)})(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes t_{11})$ .

The functor  $T_2U$  is quadratic by definition of  $T_2$ , so  $cr_2(T_2U)$  is a bilinear functor, and so is  $(T_1U(-) \otimes T_1U(-)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} cr_2(T_2U)(E, E)$ . Since  $(u'_{cr(T_2U)})_{E,E}$  is an isomorphism according to Theorem 3.22, we deduce by Proposition 1.18 that  $(u'_{cr(T_2U)})$  is a natural equivalence and  $(u'_{cr(T_2U)})_{X,X}$  is an isomorphism. Furthermore  $1 \otimes 1 \otimes \overline{cr_2(t_2)}$  and  $t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes t_{11}$  are surjective by construction. It follows that

$$\text{coker}((\phi_1)_X) = \text{coker}((S_2^{T_2U})_X) = T_1(T_2U)(X)$$

by Proposition 1.9.

Since  $\text{Im}(\phi_1) \subset \text{Im}(\phi)$  we see that  $\text{coker}(\phi)$  is a quotient of  $\text{coker}(\phi_1) = T_1(T_2U) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e$  which is a linear functor. Thus  $\text{coker}(\phi)$  is a linear functor by Proposition 1.7. But the cross-effect functor is exact by Proposition 1.5, so applying it to sequence (6.7.1) shows that  $cr_2(\hat{\phi})$  is pointwise surjective.  $\square$

**Proof of Proposition 6.5.** The functor  $\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})$  is bilinear and bireduced, so by Lemma 2.6,  $\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}$  is quadratic. By Proposition 1.12, we deduce that  $(\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2}$  is quadratic. Consequently  $cr_2((\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2})$  is bilinear. Since  $cr_2(- \otimes M)$  is a quotient of  $cr_2((\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2})$  by Lemma 6.6, the functor  $cr_2(- \otimes M)$  is also bilinear, so  $- \otimes M$  is quadratic.  $\square$

Proposition 6.5 leads to the following definition.

**Definition 6.8.** The functor

$$\mathbb{T}_2 : \mathcal{Q} \text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E \rightarrow \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$$

is defined as follows: for  $M \in \mathcal{Q} \text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$  let  $\mathbb{T}_2(M) = - \otimes M$ , and for a morphism of quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules  $(\phi_e, \phi_{ee}) : M \rightarrow N$  let  $\mathbb{T}_2(\phi_e, \phi_{ee}) = \varphi$  where  $\varphi_X : X \otimes M \rightarrow X \otimes N$  is given by the universal property of a push-out.

**Remark 6.9.** The functor  $\mathbb{T}_2$  extends the tensor product functor  $\mathbb{T}_1$  in the following sense: it improves the approximation of a quadratic functor  $F$  by  $\overline{u'} : T_2U(-) \otimes_{\Lambda} F(E) \rightarrow F$  by taking into account the cross-effect of  $F$  in “amalgamating”  $T_2U(X) \otimes_{\Lambda} F(E)$  with the image of  $F(X|X)$  under  $(S_2^F)_X$ . We expect that this idea can be extended to polynomial functors of higher degree.

**Remark 6.10.** Since the functor  $- \otimes M$  is quadratic by Proposition 6.5, the computation of  $(- \otimes M)(E^{\vee n})$  for  $n \geq 1$  reduces to computing  $(- \otimes M)(E)$  and  $cr_2(- \otimes M)(E, E)$ , see Proposition 1.4.



### 6.3. Computation of the quadratic tensor product $E \otimes M$

In Section 7, in order to obtain the desired equivalence between quadratic functors and quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -modules, we need to compute  $E \otimes M$  for  $M \in \mathcal{Q} \text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$ , as follows.

**Proposition 6.11.** *For  $M \in \mathcal{PQ} \text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$ , there exists a natural isomorphism of abelian groups*

$$E \otimes M \xrightarrow{\sim} M_e.$$

In order to define this isomorphism we need the following lemmas.

**Lemma 6.12.** *For  $M \in \mathcal{PQ} \text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$ , there exists an isomorphism  $\overline{\mu}_e : (T_2 U)(E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \rightarrow M_e$  making the following diagram commutative*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U(E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e & \xrightarrow{\mu_e} & M_e \\ & \searrow t_2 \otimes 1 & \nearrow \overline{\mu}_e \\ & (T_2 U)(E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e & \end{array}$$

where  $\mu_e$  is the canonical isomorphism. In particular, the map  $t_2 \otimes 1$  is an isomorphism.

**Proof.** To prove that  $\overline{\mu}_e$  exists we have to prove that  $\mu_e(\text{Ker}(t_2 \otimes 1)) = 0$ . By Proposition 2.13 we have

$$T_2(F) = \text{coker}(\text{ker}(cr_2 F(X|X) \xrightarrow{t_{11}} (T_{11} cr_2 F)(X|X)) \xrightarrow{S_2^U} F(X)).$$

So we have  $\text{ker}(t_2) = S_2^U(\text{ker}(t_{11}))$  and

$$\mu_e(\text{ker}(t_2 \otimes 1)) = \mu_e(S_2^U \otimes 1)(\text{ker}(t_{11}) \otimes M_e) = P \hat{H}(t_{11} \otimes Id)(\text{ker}(t_{11}) \otimes M_e) = 0$$

where the second equality is given by Proposition 5.7.

Since  $t_2 \otimes 1$  is surjective and  $\mu_e$  is an isomorphism we deduce that  $\overline{\mu}_e$  is an isomorphism.

As a consequence we obtain that  $t_2 \otimes 1$  is also an isomorphism.  $\square$

**Lemma 6.13.** *For  $M \in \mathcal{PQ} \text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$ , there exists a morphism  $\overline{P} : (M_{ee})_{\mathfrak{S}_2} \rightarrow M_e$  making the following diagram commutative*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} M_{ee} & \xrightarrow{P} & M_e \\ & \searrow \pi & \nearrow \overline{P} \\ & (M_{ee})_{\mathfrak{S}_2} & \end{array}$$

**Proof.** This is due to the relation  $PT = P$  in Definition 5.3.  $\square$

**Lemma 6.14.** *There exists an isomorphism*

$$\overline{\mu_{ee}} : ((T_1 U)(E) \otimes (T_1 U)(E)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee} \otimes_{\mathfrak{S}_2} \rightarrow (M_{ee}) \otimes_{\mathfrak{S}_2}$$

making the following diagram commutative

$$\begin{array}{ccc} ((T_1 U)(E) \otimes (T_1 U)(E)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee} & \xrightarrow{\mu_{ee}} & M_{ee} \\ \pi \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi \\ (((T_1 U)(E) \otimes (T_1 U)(E)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee}) \otimes_{\mathfrak{S}_2} & \xrightarrow{\overline{\mu_{ee}}} & (M_{ee}) \otimes_{\mathfrak{S}_2} \end{array}$$

where  $((T_1 U)(E) \otimes (T_1 U)(E)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{\mu_{ee}} M_{ee}$  is the canonical isomorphism.

**Proof.** This is immediate from the fact that the canonical isomorphism

$$((T_1 U)(E) \otimes (T_1 U)(E)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{\mu_{ee}} M_{ee}$$

is compatible with the involutions.  $\square$

Proposition 6.11 is a direct consequence of the following lemma.

**Lemma 6.15.** *For  $M \in PQ \text{Mod}_C^E$ , there exists an isomorphism*

$$(\overline{P\mu_{ee}}, \overline{\mu_e}) : E \otimes M \rightarrow M_e$$

such that  $(\overline{P\mu_{ee}}, \overline{\mu_e})\hat{\phi} = \overline{P\mu_{ee}}$  and  $(\overline{P\mu_{ee}}, \overline{\mu_e})\hat{\psi} = \overline{\mu_e}$  where the maps  $\overline{P}$ ,  $\overline{\mu_{ee}}$  and  $\overline{\mu_e}$  are defined in Lemmas 6.13, 6.14 and 6.12 respectively and the maps  $\hat{\phi}$  and  $\hat{\psi}$  appear in the pushout diagram of Proposition 6.2.

**Proof.** To prove that the morphism  $(\overline{P\mu_{ee}}, \overline{\mu_e})$  exists, it is sufficient to prove that  $\overline{P\mu_{ee}}\psi = \overline{\mu_e}\phi$  by the universal property of the push-out.

For  $f \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$  and  $m \in M_{ee}$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{P\mu_{ee}}\pi(\delta \otimes 1)(f \otimes m) &= P\mu_{ee}(\bar{f} \otimes \bar{f} \otimes m) \quad \text{by Lemmas 6.13 and 6.14} \\ &= P((\bar{f} \otimes \bar{f}).m) \quad \text{by definition of } \mu_{ee} \\ &= f P(m) \quad \text{by Definition 5.1} \\ &= \mu_e(f \otimes P(m)) \quad \text{by definition of } \mu_e \\ &= \overline{\mu_e}(t_2 \otimes Id)(f \otimes P(m)) \quad \text{by Lemma 6.12} \\ &= \overline{\mu_e}(t_2 \otimes P)(f \otimes m). \end{aligned}$$

For  $f, g \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ ,  $x \in U(E|E)$ ,  $a \in M_e$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \overline{P} \overline{\mu_{ee}} \pi(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes \hat{H}(t_{11} \otimes 1))(f \otimes g \otimes x \otimes a) \\
 &= P \mu_{ee}(\bar{f} \otimes \bar{g} \otimes \hat{H}(t_{11}(x) \otimes a)) \quad \text{by Lemmas 6.13 and 6.14} \\
 &= P((\bar{f} \otimes \bar{g}) \hat{H}(t_{11}(x) \otimes a)) \quad \text{by definition of } \mu_{ee} \\
 &= P \hat{H}((\bar{f} \otimes \bar{g})(t_{11}(x) \otimes a)) \quad \text{since } \hat{H} \text{ is a morphism of } \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}\text{-modules by Definition 5.1} \\
 &= P \hat{H}(t_{11}(U(f|g)(x)) \otimes a) \quad \text{by the structure of } \bar{A} \otimes \bar{A}\text{-module of } T_{11}(cr_2 U)(E, E) \\
 &= P \hat{H}(t_{11} \otimes Id)(U(f|g)(x) \otimes a) \\
 &= \mu_e(S_2^U \otimes Id)(U(f|g)(x) \otimes a) \quad \text{by Proposition 5.7} \\
 &= \overline{\mu_e}(t_2 \otimes Id)(S_2^U \otimes Id)(U(f|g)(x) \otimes a) \quad \text{by Lemma 6.12} \\
 &= \overline{\mu_e}(t_2 S_2^U U(f|g)(x) \otimes a).
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence the morphism  $(\overline{P} \overline{\mu_{ee}}, \overline{\mu_e}) : E \otimes M \rightarrow M_e$  exists.

For  $m \in M_{ee}$ , we have:

$$\overline{\mu_{ee}} \pi(\delta \otimes 1)(1 \otimes m) = \bar{m}.$$

Since  $\overline{\mu_{ee}}$  is an isomorphism by Lemma 6.14 we deduce that  $\pi(\delta \otimes 1)$  is surjective. Consequently  $\psi$  is surjective and by general properties of push-out diagrams we obtain that  $\hat{\psi} : (T_2 U)(E) \otimes M_e \rightarrow E \otimes M$  is surjective. Now, since  $(\overline{P} \overline{\mu_{ee}}, \overline{\mu_e}) \hat{\psi} = \overline{\mu_e}$  is an isomorphism by Lemma 6.12, it follows that  $(\overline{P} \overline{\mu_{ee}}, \overline{\mu_e})$  is an isomorphism.  $\square$

In particular, by Proposition 5.16, for  $F$  a quadratic functor,  $\mathbb{S}_2(F)$  is a quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module, so we can apply the previous lemma to  $\mathbb{S}_2(F)$  to obtain:

**Lemma 6.16.** *For  $F \in \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  the morphism*

$$((S_2^F)_E \overline{\mu_{ee}}, \overline{\mu_e}) : E \otimes \mathbb{S}_2(F) \rightarrow F(E)$$

*is an isomorphism.*

#### 6.4. Computation of the cross-effect of $- \otimes M$

The aim of this section is to prove the following theorem which allows to compute the cross-effect of  $- \otimes M$ , in Corollary 6.20.

**Theorem 6.17.** *For  $\mathcal{C}$  a pointed theory generated by  $E$  and  $M$  a proto-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module relative to  $E$ , the following natural transformation of functors is an equivalence if and only if  $M$  is a quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module.*

$$cr_2(\hat{\phi}) : cr_2((((T_1 U(-) \otimes T_1 U(-)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee}) \Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2}) \rightarrow cr_2(- \otimes M).$$

Here  $\hat{\phi}$  is the map in the push-out diagram in Definition 6.2.

The proof of this theorem relies on the following lemmas.

**Lemma 6.18.** *Let  $(B, T)$  be a symmetric bifunctor from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$  such that  $B$  is bilinear bireduced, see Definition 1.19. Then the map given by*

$$(i_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi B(i_1^2, i_2^2) : B(X, Y) \longrightarrow cr_2(B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2}(X, Y)$$

for  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$ , is a natural equivalence.

**Proof.** For  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$ , we have  $B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}}(X \vee Y) = B(X, X) \oplus B(X, Y) \oplus B(Y, X) \oplus B(Y, Y)$  since  $B$  is a bilinear functor. For  $X_1 = X, X_2 = Y$  and  $p, q = 1, 2$  we have  $T_{X_1 \vee X_2, X_1 \vee X_2} B(i_p^2, i_q^2) = B(i_q^2, i_p^2) T_{X_p, X_q}$ . Thus  $(B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2}(X \vee Y) = B(X, X)_{\mathfrak{S}_2} \oplus B(Y, Y)_{\mathfrak{S}_2} \oplus (B(X, Y) \oplus B(Y, X))_{\mathfrak{S}_2}$  and  $cr_2(B\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2}(X, Y) = (B(X, Y) \oplus B(Y, X))_{\mathfrak{S}_2}$  where the action of  $\mathfrak{S}_2$  on  $B(X, Y) \oplus B(Y, X)$  is given by  $t(x, y) = (T_{Y, X}(y), T_{X, Y}(x))$ . We have  $(i_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi B(i_1^2, i_2^2)(x) = \overline{(x, 0)}$ . An inverse of this map is defined as follows: let  $f : B(X, Y) \oplus B(Y, X) \rightarrow B(X, Y)$  be given by  $f(x, y) = x + T_{Y, X}(y)$ . Then  $f(t(x, y)) = T_{Y, X}(y) + T_{Y, X}T_{X, Y}(x) = f(x, y)$ . So  $f$  defines a map  $\tilde{f} : (B(X, Y) \oplus B(Y, X))_{\mathfrak{S}_2} \rightarrow B(X, Y)$ , and one easily checks that  $\tilde{f}$  is the inverse of  $(i_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi B(i_1^2, i_2^2)$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 6.19.** *For a  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -module  $A$ , let  $\mu_A : \mathbb{T}_{11}(A)(E, E) \rightarrow A$  denote the canonical isomorphism. Then the following diagram is commutative:*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} N \oplus U(E|E) \otimes M_{ee} & \xrightarrow[k_1]{\simeq} & cr_2((\mathbb{T}_{11}(N)\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2})(E, E) \oplus U(E|E) \otimes M_{ee} \\ \downarrow k_2 & & \downarrow cr_2(\bar{\psi}) \\ M_{ee} & \xrightarrow[k_3]{\simeq} & cr_2((\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2})(E, E) \end{array}$$

where:  $N = T_{11}(cr_2(U))(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e$ ,  $k_1 = (i_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(N)(i_1^2, i_2^2)(\mu_N)^{-1} \oplus 1$ ,  $k_2 = (\hat{H}, k'_2)$  with  $k'_2(\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes m) = (r_1^2 \xi \otimes r_2^2 \xi) \cdot (m + Tm)$  for  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$  and  $m \in M_{ee}$ , and  $k_3 = (i_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})(i_1^2, i_2^2)(\mu_{M_{ee}})^{-1}$ .

**Proof.** The morphisms  $k_1$  and  $k_3$  are isomorphisms since  $\mu_{M_{ee}}$  and  $\mu_N$  are the canonical isomorphisms and  $(i_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(N)(i_1^2, i_2^2)$  and  $(i_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})(i_1^2, i_2^2)$  are isomorphisms by Lemma 6.18. The fact that  $k'_2$  is well defined follows from the fact that  $k_3$  is an isomorphism and from commutativity of the diagram which we prove now.

By Lemma 6.4,  $cr_2(\bar{\psi}) = (cr_2(1 \otimes 1 \otimes \hat{H}), cr_2(\pi(\delta \otimes 1)))$ .

The commutativity of the diagram on  $N$  follows from the naturality of  $\mu$  and by the fact that  $\mathbb{T}_{11}(-)(-, -)$  is a trifunctor.

To prove the commutativity of the diagram on  $U(E|E) \otimes M_{ee}$  we consider the injection  $i_{(1,2)}^2 : cr_2((\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2})(E, E) \rightarrow ((\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2})(E \vee E)$  and we prove that  $i_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2(\bar{\psi}) k_1 = i_{(1,2)}^2 k_3 k_2$  on  $U(E|E) \otimes M_{ee}$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2(\bar{\psi})k_1(\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes m) \\
 &= \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2(\pi(\delta \otimes 1))(\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes m) \\
 &= \pi(\delta \otimes 1)\iota_{(1,2)}^2(\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes m) \\
 &= \pi(\delta \otimes 1)((\xi - i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi - i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi) \otimes m) \quad \text{by (2.13.5)} \\
 &= \pi((\bar{\xi} \otimes \bar{\xi} - \overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} - \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi}) \otimes m) \\
 &= \pi(((\overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} + \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi}) \otimes (\overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} + \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi}) - \overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} - \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi}) \otimes m) \\
 &\quad \text{by Lemma 3.6(3) since } T_1 U \text{ is linear} \\
 &= \pi(\overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi} \otimes m + \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} \otimes m) \\
 &= \pi(\overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi} \otimes m + \iota(\overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi} \otimes Tm)) \quad \text{cf. Propositions 3.28 and 3.25} \\
 &= \pi(\overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi} \otimes m + \overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi} \otimes Tm) \quad \text{since } \pi(tx) = \pi(x) \\
 &= \pi(\overline{i_1^2 r_1^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{i_2^2 r_2^2 \xi} \otimes (m + Tm)) \\
 &= \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})(i_1^2, i_2^2)(\overline{r_1^2 \xi} \otimes \overline{r_2^2 \xi} \otimes (m + Tm)) \\
 &= \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})(i_1^2, i_2^2)(\bar{1} \otimes \bar{1} \otimes (r_1^2 \xi \otimes r_2^2 \xi).(m + Tm)) \\
 &= \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})(i_1^2, i_2^2)\mu_{M_{ee}}^{-1}((r_1^2 \xi \otimes r_2^2 \xi).(m + Tm)) \\
 &= \iota_{(1,2)}^2 k_3((r_1^2 \xi \otimes r_2^2 \xi).(m + Tm)) \\
 &= \iota_{(1,2)}^2 k_3 k_2(\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes m). \quad \square
 \end{aligned}$$

**Proof of Theorem 6.17.** By Lemma 2.6 and Proposition 1.12 the source functor is bilinear and we deduce from Proposition 6.5 that the target functor is bilinear. So according to Proposition 1.18 it suffices to check that  $cr_2(\hat{\phi})_{(E,E)}$  is an isomorphism if and only if  $M$  is a quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module. By Lemma 6.6 we know that, for  $M$  a proto-quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module,  $cr_2(\hat{\phi})_{(E,E)}$  is surjective. So it is sufficient to prove that  $cr_2(\hat{\phi})_{(E,E)}$  is injective if and only if the condition  $(QM2)$  is satisfied.

As a pushout of abelian groups can be written as a right exact sequence in an obvious way and as the cross-effect functor is exact, we deduce from Lemma 6.4 that the following diagram is also a pushout.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 cr_2((\mathbb{T}_{11}(N)\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})\mathfrak{S}_2)(E, E) \oplus cr_2(U)(E, E) \otimes M_{ee} & \xrightarrow{cr_2(\bar{\phi})_{E,E}} & cr_2(T_2 U)(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \\
 \downarrow cr_2(\bar{\psi})_{E,E} & & \downarrow cr_2(\hat{\psi})_{E,E} \\
 cr_2((\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})\mathfrak{S}_2)(E, E) & \xrightarrow{cr_2(\hat{\phi})_{E,E}} & cr_2(- \otimes M)(E, E).
 \end{array}$$

By the previous lemma we obtain the following commutative diagram (where, for simplicity, we omit the subscript  $E, E$ ):

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 N \oplus U(E|E) \otimes M_{ee} & \xrightarrow[k_1]{\simeq} & cr_2((\mathbb{T}_{11}(N)\Delta_C)\mathfrak{S}_2)(E, E) \oplus cr_2(U)(E, E) \otimes M_{ee} & \xrightarrow{cr_2(\bar{\phi})} & cr_2(T_2U)(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \\
 \downarrow k_2 & & \downarrow cr_2(\bar{\psi}) & & \downarrow cr_2(\hat{\psi}) \\
 M_{ee} & \xrightarrow[k_3]{\simeq} & cr_2((\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})\Delta_C)\mathfrak{S}_2)(E, E) & \xrightarrow{cr_2(\hat{\phi})} & cr_2(- \otimes M)(E, E).
 \end{array}$$

As  $k_1$  and  $k_3$  are isomorphisms, we deduce that the exterior diagram is a pushout too.

By a general property of pushouts in  $Ab$  we deduce that:

$$\ker(cr_2(\hat{\phi})) = k_3 \ker(cr_2(\hat{\phi})k_3) = k_3 k_2 \ker(cr_2(\bar{\phi})k_1). \quad (6.19.1)$$

Recall that  $cr_2(\bar{\phi}) = (cr_2(\overline{\phi'_1 \otimes 1}), cr_2(t_2) \otimes P)$ . So, we have

$$cr_2(\bar{\phi})k_1 = (cr_2(\overline{\phi'_1 \otimes 1})(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(N)(i_1^2, i_2^2)(\mu_N)^{-1}, cr_2(t_2) \otimes P).$$

In the sequel, we compute  $cr_2(\overline{\phi'_1 \otimes 1})(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(N)(i_1^2, i_2^2)(\mu_N)^{-1}$ . For  $x \in cr_2(U)(E, E)$  and  $a \in M_e$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2(\overline{\phi'_1 \otimes 1})(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(N)(i_1^2, i_2^2)(\mu_N)^{-1}(t_{11}(x) \otimes a) \\
 &= (\overline{\phi'_1 \otimes 1}) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(N)(i_1^2, i_2^2)(\mu_N)^{-1}(t_{11}(x) \otimes a) \\
 &= (\overline{\phi'_1 \otimes 1}) \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(N)(i_1^2, i_2^2)(\bar{1} \otimes \bar{1} \otimes (t_{11}(x) \otimes a)) \\
 &= (\phi'_1 \otimes 1)(\bar{i}_1^2 \otimes \bar{i}_2^2 \otimes (t_{11}(x) \otimes a)) \\
 &= \phi'_1(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes t_{11})(i_1^2 \otimes i_2^2 \otimes x) \otimes a \\
 &= t_2 S_2^U U(i_1^2 | i_2^2)(x) \otimes a \quad \text{by the proof of Lemma 6.4} \\
 &= t_2 U(\nabla^2) U(i_1^2 \vee i_2^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(x) \otimes a \\
 &= t_2 \iota_{(1,2)}^2(x) \otimes a \\
 &= \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2(t_2)(x) \otimes a \\
 &= \iota_{(1,2)}^2 (\overline{cr_2(t_2)} \otimes 1)(t_{11}(x) \otimes a).
 \end{aligned}$$

We deduce that:

$$cr_2(\bar{\phi})k_1 = (\overline{cr_2(t_2)} \otimes 1, cr_2(t_2) \otimes P).$$

By Theorem 2.5,  $\overline{cr_2(t_2)}$  is an isomorphism, whence we have the following exact sequence:

$$U(E|E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{k_4} N \oplus (U(E|E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_{ee}) \xrightarrow{cr_2(\bar{\phi})k_1} T_2U(E|E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e$$

where

$$k_4 = ((\overline{cr_2(t_2)} \otimes 1)^{-1} (cr_2(t_2) \otimes P), -1)^t = ((\overline{cr_2(t_2)})^{-1} cr_2(t_2) \otimes P, -1)^t = (t_{11} \otimes P, -1)^t.$$

Since  $k_3$  is an isomorphism, we deduce from (6.19.1) and the last exact sequence that:

$$\ker(cr_2(\hat{\phi})k_3) = k_2 \ker(cr_2(\bar{\phi})k_1) = k_2 \operatorname{Im}(k_4).$$

For  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$  and  $m \in M_{ee}$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} k_2 k_4 (\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes m) &= k_2 (t_{11} \rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes Pm, -\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes m) \\ &= \hat{H} (t_{11} \rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes Pm) - (r_1^2 \xi \otimes r_2^2 \xi) \cdot (m + Tm). \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $\ker(cr_2(\hat{\phi})) = 0$  if and only if the condition (QM2) holds.  $\square$

We now are ready to compute the cross-effect of  $- \otimes M$ .

**Corollary 6.20.** *Let  $M \in Q \operatorname{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$ , there is a natural isomorphism of bifunctors:*

$$\gamma : (T_1 U(X) \otimes T_1 U(Y)) \otimes_{A \otimes A} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{\sim} cr_2(- \otimes M)(X, Y)$$

for all  $X, Y \in \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$  such that:

$$(\gamma)_{X,Y} (t_1(f) \otimes t_1(g) \otimes m) = (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \hat{\phi} \pi (t_1(i_1 f) \otimes t_1(i_2 g) \otimes m)$$

where  $f \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$ ,  $g \in \mathcal{C}(E, Y)$ ,  $m \in M_{ee}$ ,  $i_1 : X \rightarrow X \vee Y$  and  $i_2 : Y \rightarrow X \vee Y$ .

When  $E$  has suitable properties this result extends to all objects  $X, Y$  which are colimits of copies of  $E$ , see Theorem 6.27 below.

**Proof.** Recall that  $\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})(X, Y) = (T_1 U(X) \otimes T_1 U(Y)) \otimes_{A \otimes A} M_{ee}$  by Definition 3.20. We have the following natural factorization of  $(\gamma)_{X,Y}$ :

$$\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})(X, Y) \xrightarrow{(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})(i_1, i_2)} cr_2((\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee}) \Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2})(X, Y) \xrightarrow{cr_2(\hat{\phi})} cr_2(- \otimes M)(X, Y).$$

Since  $\mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})$  is bilinear we deduce from Proposition 6.18 that  $(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(M_{ee})(i_1, i_2)$  is a natural equivalence, and we deduce from Theorem 6.17 that  $cr_2(\hat{\phi})$  is an isomorphism. Hence  $\gamma$  is a natural equivalence, too.  $\square$

### 6.5. Preservation of filtered colimits and suitable coequalizers

In this section we show that the quadratic tensor product has strong enough preservation properties to be determined, under suitable assumptions, by its restriction to finite sums of  $E$  which was determined in the preceding sections. Under even stronger, but still very general assumptions on  $\mathcal{C}$  which in particular cover all categories of models of a pointed algebraic theory

where a group law is part of the structure, we extend the computation of the cross-effect of  $- \otimes M$  in the preceding section to all objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

More precisely, we suppose throughout this section that  $\mathcal{C}$  has all (even infinite) sums (or at least all sums of copies of  $E$ ), and that  $E$  is a small regular projective generator of  $\mathcal{C}$ . Recall that  $E$  small means that the functor  $\mathcal{C}(E, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbf{Set}_*$  preserves filtered colimits, and regular projective generator means that  $E$  is projective with respect to the class of all regular epimorphisms (i.e., quotients of coequalizers in  $\mathcal{C}$ ), and that all objects  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  are colimits of copies of  $E$ , or equivalently, admit a regular epimorphism  $\bigvee_{i \in I} E \twoheadrightarrow X$  for some set  $I$ . Note that these assumptions are satisfied for all categories of models of a pointed algebraic theory when we take  $E$  to be the free object of rank 1.

**Definition 6.21.** A presentation of an object  $X$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  is a coequalizer diagram

$$\mathbb{P} : X_1 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{d_0} \\ \xrightarrow{d_1} \end{array} X_0 \xrightarrow{q} X$$

in  $\mathcal{C}$ . We say that  $\mathbb{P}$  is  $E$ -free if  $X_0$  and  $X_1$  are  $E$ -free, i.e. are sums of copies of  $E$ , and that  $\mathbb{P}$  is  $E$ -saturated if  $\forall f_0, f_1 \in \mathcal{C}(E, X_0), (qf_0 = qf_1 \Rightarrow \exists f_{01} \in \mathcal{C}(E, X_1), f_k = d_k f_{01}, k = 0, 1)$ . Moreover,  $\mathbb{P}$  is said to be a reflexive presentation (or reflexive coequalizer) if the pair  $(d_0, d_1)$  is reflexive, i.e. admits a common section  $s_0 \in \mathcal{C}(X_0, X_1)$  of  $d_0$  and  $d_1$ .

**Lemma 6.22.** We have the following properties for  $\mathcal{C}$  and  $E$  as above.

- (1) Any object of  $\mathcal{C}$  admits an  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free presentation.
- (2) Any  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free presentation is reflexive.
- (3) If  $\mathcal{C}$  is Mal'cev and Barr exact, any reflexive presentation is  $E$ -saturated.

Before giving the proof we point out that all semi-abelian categories are Mal'cev and Barr exact, see [6]; so these hypothesis cover all categories of models of a pointed algebraic theory where a group law is part of the structure, like groups, algebras over any reduced algebraic operad etc., as well as the categories of compact Hausdorff-spaces, of crossed modules of groups, of  $C^*$ -algebras etc., see for example [6].

**Proof of Lemma 6.22.** (1): Let  $X$  be an object in  $\mathcal{C}$ . As  $E$  generates  $\mathcal{C}$  there exists an  $E$ -free presentation

$$\mathbb{P} : E_1 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{d_0} \\ \xrightarrow{d_1} \end{array} E_0 \xrightarrow{q} X.$$

Now let  $P[q] = \{(f_0, f_1) \in \mathcal{C}(E, E_0) \mid qf_0 = qf_1\}$ ,  $E'_1 = \bigvee_{(f_0, f_1) \in P[q]} E$  and  $e_{(f_0, f_1)} : E \rightarrow E'_1$ ,  $(f_0, f_1) \in P[q]$ , be the defining injections of the coproduct. For  $k = 0, 1$ , let  $d'_k : E'_1 \rightarrow E_0$  such that  $d_k e_{(f_0, f_1)} = f_k$ . Then

$$\mathbb{P}' : E_1 \vee E'_1 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{(d_0, d'_0)} \\ \xrightarrow{(d_1, d'_1)} \end{array} E_0 \xrightarrow{q} X$$

is an  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free presentation of  $X$ .



(2): Let

$$\mathbb{P}: E_1 \rightrightarrows_{d_1}^{d_0} E_0 \xrightarrow{q} X$$

be an  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free presentation, with  $E_0 = \bigvee_{i \in I} E$  and defining injections  $e_i: E \rightarrow E_0$ . Taking  $f_0 = f_1 = e_i$  for  $i \in I$  provides a map  $f_{01}^i \in \mathcal{C}(E, E_1)$  such that  $d_0 f_{01}^i = d_1 f_{01}^i = e_i$ . Pasting these maps  $f_{01}^i$  together furnishes the desired common section  $s_0: E_0 \rightarrow E_1$  of  $d_0$  and  $d_1$  such that  $s_0 e_i = f_{01}^i$ .

(3): Consider the following diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} X_1 & \xrightarrow{\quad d_0 \quad} & X_0 & \xrightarrow{\quad q \quad} & X \\ & \searrow^{d_1} & \uparrow p_0 & & \uparrow q \\ E & \xrightarrow{\quad (f_0, f_1) \quad} & R[q] & \xrightarrow{\quad p_1 \quad} & X_0 \end{array}$$

(dotted arrow from  $X_1$  to  $R[q]$  is labeled  $(d_0, d_1)$ )

where the top line is a reflexive presentation and the right hand square is a pullback (i.e.,  $(p_0, p_1)$  is a kernel pair of  $q$ ). Thus the map  $(d_0, d_1)$  as indicated exists such that  $p_k(d_0, d_1) = d_k$ ,  $k = 0, 1$ . Moreover, we suppose that  $f_0, f_1 \in \mathcal{C}(E, X_0)$  are maps such that  $qf_0 = qf_1$ ; thus the map  $(f_0, f_1)$  as indicated exists such that  $p_k(f_0, f_1) = f_k$ ,  $k = 0, 1$ . By the hypothesis on  $\mathcal{C}$  the map  $(d_0, d_1)$  is a regular epimorphism (cf. [6] or [7]), so by regular projectivity of  $E$  there exists a lifting  $f_{01}$  as indicated such that  $(d_0, d_1)f_{01} = (f_0, f_1)$ . It satisfies  $d_k f_{01} = p_k(d_0, d_1)f_{01} = p_k(f_0, f_1) = f_k$ , as desired.  $\square$

Now consider a functor  $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  to some category  $\mathcal{D}$ . We say that  $F$  preserves a certain type of coequalizers (or presentations) if it transforms coequalizers of this type in  $\mathcal{C}$  into coequalizers in  $\mathcal{D}$ .

**Proposition 6.23.** *For  $F$  as above consider the following properties.*

- (1)  $F$  preserves  $E$ -saturated coequalizers.
- (2)  $F$  preserves  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free coequalizers.
- (3)  $F$  preserves reflexive coequalizers.

*Then (1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (2)  $\Leftarrow$  (3), and if  $\mathcal{C}$  is Mal'cev and Barr exact then all three properties are equivalent.*

**Proof.** It is obvious that (1) implies (2), and (3) implies (2) by Lemma 6.22(2). Moreover, if  $\mathcal{C}$  is Mal'cev and Barr exact (1) implies (3) by Lemma 6.22(3), so it remains to prove that (2) implies (1). Let  $\mathbb{P}$  be an  $E$ -saturated coequalizer as in Definition 6.21. Then we may choose a

regular epimorphism  $q_1: E_1 \twoheadrightarrow X_1$  with an  $E$ -free object  $E_1$ , and an  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free presentation of  $X_0$  as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & E'_1 & & \\
 & & \downarrow d'_0 \parallel d'_1 & & \\
 & \tilde{d}_0 & & & \\
 E_1 & \cdots \twoheadrightarrow & E_0 & & \\
 \downarrow q_1 & \nearrow \tilde{d}_1 & \downarrow q_0 & & \\
 X_1 & \xrightarrow[d_1]{d_0} & X_0 & \xrightarrow{q} & X.
 \end{array}
 \quad (6.23.1)$$

Here the diagonal map  $s$  is a map such that  $d_0 s = d_1 s = q_0$ ; it is constructed on a given summand  $E$  of  $E_0$  by taking  $f_0$  and  $f_1$  to be the restriction of  $q_0$  to this summand, and applying the saturation property of  $\mathbb{P}$ , as in the proof of Lemma 6.22(2). Moreover,  $\tilde{d}_0$  and  $\tilde{d}_1$  are liftings such that  $q_0 \tilde{d}_k = d_k q_1$ ,  $k = 0, 1$ ; they exist since  $E_1$  is regular projective. Now observe that

$$E_1 \vee E'_1 \xrightarrow[(\tilde{d}_1, d'_1)]{(\tilde{d}_0, d'_0)} E_0 \xrightarrow{qq_0} X$$

is an  $E$ -free presentation of  $X$ ; by applying the procedure in the proof of Lemma 6.22(1) we find an  $E$ -free object  $E''_1$  and maps  $E''_1 \xrightarrow[\epsilon_1]{\epsilon_0} E_0$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  such that

$$E_1 \vee E'_1 \vee E''_1 \xrightarrow[(\tilde{d}_1, d'_1, \epsilon_1)]{(\tilde{d}_0, d'_0, \epsilon_0)} E_0 \xrightarrow{qq_0} X$$

is an  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free presentation of  $X$ . Next we construct a map  $s' \in \mathcal{C}(E''_1, X_1)$  such that  $d_k s' = q_0 \epsilon_k$ ,  $k = 0, 1$ : on a given summand  $E$  of  $E''_1$  it is obtained by taking  $f_k$  to be the restriction of  $q_0 \epsilon_k$  to that summand, and applying the saturation property of  $\mathbb{P}$ . We thus get the following diagram where  $e'_1$  is the injection.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & E'_1 & & \\
 & \nearrow e'_1 & \downarrow d'_0 \parallel d'_1 & & \\
 & (\tilde{d}_0, d'_0, \epsilon_0) & & & \\
 E_1 \vee E'_1 \vee E''_1 & \xrightarrow[(\tilde{d}_1, d'_1, \epsilon_1)]{(\tilde{d}_0, d'_0, \epsilon_0)} & E_0 & \xrightarrow{qq_0} & X \\
 \downarrow (q_1, s, d'_0, s') & & \downarrow q_0 & & \parallel \\
 X_1 & \xrightarrow[d_1]{d_0} & X_0 & \xrightarrow{q} & X.
 \end{array}
 \quad (6.23.2)$$

It is commutative, for the left hand square in the sense that the two squares formed by taking the horizontal arrows with the same index  $k = 0, 1$ , commute.

Now we apply a functor  $F: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  preserving  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free coequalizers to this diagram, and deduce that  $F(X_1) \xrightarrow[F(d_1)]{F(d_0)} F(X_0) \xrightarrow{F(q)} F(X)$  is a coequalizer, as follows. Let  $A \in \mathcal{D}$  and  $\alpha \in \mathcal{D}(F(X_0), A)$  such that  $\alpha F(d_0) = \alpha F(d_1)$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha F(q_0) F(\tilde{d}_0, d'_0, \epsilon_0) &= \alpha F(d_0) F(q_1, sd'_0, s') \\ &= \alpha F(d_1) F(q_1, sd'_0, s') \\ &= \alpha F(q_0) F(\tilde{d}_1, d'_1, \epsilon_1). \end{aligned}$$

As  $F$  transforms the top line and the column in (6.23.2) into a coequalizers it follows that there exists a unique map  $\bar{\alpha} \in \mathcal{D}(F(X), A)$  such that  $\bar{\alpha} F(qq_0) = \alpha F(q_0)$ , and that  $F(q_0)$  is a regular epimorphism. The latter fact implies that  $\bar{\alpha} F(qq_0) = \alpha F(q_0)$  iff  $\bar{\alpha} F(q) = \alpha$ , which implies the assertion.  $\square$

Recall that if  $\mathbb{P}$  as in Definition 6.21 is a reflexive coequalizer in an abelian category then  $X \cong \text{Coker}(d_0 - d_1: X_1 \rightarrow X_0) \cong \text{Coker}(d'_1: \text{Ker}(d_0) \rightarrow X_0)$  where  $d'_1$  denotes the restriction of  $d_1$ . This implies that an additive functor between abelian categories preserves reflexive coequalizers iff it is right exact, so preservation of reflexive coequalizers generally is considered as the appropriate generalization of right exactness to non-linear functors. In fact, a functor preserving reflexive coequalizers and filtered colimits generically is determined by its restriction to “free objects of finite rank” (here the term “free objects” is to be taken literally when  $\mathcal{C}$  is a category of models of an algebraic theory, and has to be replaced by the notion of “ $E$ -free objects” in our more general context, see Proposition 6.25 below). In particular, this reduction to free objects of finite rank is used in the study of quadratic endofunctors of the category of groups [4] and of functors in the context of operads [9]. In the same spirit, we now state a preservation theorem for our quadratic tensor product which shows, however, that in our very general situation reflexive coequalizers must be replaced by the more specific  $E$ -saturated ones; on the other hand, Proposition 6.23 explains why this difference did not yet appear in practice: most “real life” pointed categories occurring in algebra are semi-abelian and hence Mal’cev and Barr exact.

**Theorem 6.24.** *Suppose that  $\mathcal{C}$  is a pointed category with sums and that  $E$  is a small regular projective generator of  $\mathcal{C}$ . Moreover, let  $M$  be a quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module relative to  $E$ . Then the functors  $T_n U_E$  and  $-\otimes M: \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ab}$ ,  $n = 1, 2$ , preserve filtered colimits and  $E$ -saturated coequalizers, and reflexive coequalizers if  $\mathcal{C}$  is Mal’cev and Barr exact.*

**Proof.** Let  $\text{Set}_*$  denote the category of pointed sets, and let  $\text{Set}_* \text{-}\mathcal{C}(E, E)$  denote the category of pointed sets  $(S, x_0)$  equipped with a right action of the monoid  $\mathcal{C}(E, E)$  such that  $x_0 a = x_0 = x_0$  for  $x \in S$  and  $a \in \mathcal{C}(E, E)$ . Consider the functors

$$\text{Ab} \xleftarrow{\bar{\mathbb{Z}}[-]} \text{Set}_* \xleftarrow{\rho_E} \mathcal{C} \xrightarrow{\rho'_E} \text{Set}_* \text{-}\mathcal{C}(E, E) \xrightarrow{\bar{\mathbb{Z}}[-]} \text{Mod-}\Lambda$$

where  $\bar{\mathbb{Z}}[(S, x_0)] = \mathbb{Z}[S]/\mathbb{Z} \cdot x_0$ , and where  $\rho_E, \rho'_E$  are both given by  $\mathcal{C}(E, -)$ , the right action of  $\mathcal{C}(E, E)$  on  $\mathcal{C}(E, X)$  being given by precomposition. Both  $\rho_E$  and  $\rho'_E$  preserve filtered colimits since  $E$  is small, and preserve  $E$ -saturated coequalizers since  $E$  is regular projective,

and by definition of  $E$ -saturation. Moreover, both functors  $\bar{\mathbb{Z}}[-]$  are left adjoint to the obvious forgetful functors, hence preserve colimits. Thus the composite functors  $U_E = \bar{\mathbb{Z}}[-]\rho_E$  and  $U'_E = \bar{\mathbb{Z}}[-]\rho'_E$  both preserve filtered colimits and  $E$ -saturated coequalizers, and so do the functors  $U_E(X^{\vee n}) \longleftarrow X \longrightarrow U'_E(X^{\vee n})$  since colimits commute among each other. For the same reason, the functors  $T_1 U_E = \text{Coker}(S_2^F \circ \rho_{(1,2)}^2 : U_E(X^{\vee 2}) \rightarrow U_E(X))$  and  $T_2 U_E = T_2 U'_E = \text{Coker}(\tilde{\nabla} : U_E(X^{\vee 3}) \rightarrow U_E(X))$  with  $\tilde{\nabla} = \nabla_*^3 - (\nabla^2 r_{12}^3)_* - (\nabla^2 r_{13}^3)_* - (\nabla^2 r_{23}^3)_* + r_{1*}^3 + r_{2*}^3 + r_{3*}^3$  preserve filtered colimits and  $E$ -saturated coequalizers, and so do  $T_n U'_E$  for  $n = 1, 2$  noting that  $T_n U_E = T_n U'_E$  as abelian groups since  $S_2^F \circ \rho_{(1,2)}^2$  and  $\tilde{\nabla}$  are  $\mathcal{C}(E, E)$ -equivariant (see Propositions 2.14 and 2.17). The foregoing preservation properties are then inherited by the functors  $\mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ab}$  given by  $X \mapsto U_E(X) \otimes M_{ee}$ ,  $X \mapsto T_2 U_E(X) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e$ ,  $X \mapsto (T_1 U_E(X) \otimes T_1 U_E(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} N$  for  $N \in \Lambda \otimes \Lambda\text{-Mod}$ , and hence also by  $X \mapsto \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}[\mathfrak{S}_2]} ((T_1 U_E(X) \otimes T_1 U_E(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} N)$ , thanks to the right-exactness of the tensor product. Thus  $- \otimes M$  is a pushout (hence pointwise colimit) of functors which preserve filtered colimits and  $E$ -saturated coequalizers, hence so does  $- \otimes M$  as colimits commute among each other. The statement about reflexive coequalizers then follows from Proposition 6.23.  $\square$

For morphisms between functors on  $\mathcal{C}$  the reduction to “free objects of finite rank” reads as follows.

**Proposition 6.25.** *Let  $\mathcal{D}$  be any category, and let  $\varphi, \psi : F \rightarrow G$  be two morphisms between functors  $F, G : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  which both preserve filtered colimits and  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free coequalizers. Then  $\varphi = \psi$  iff  $\varphi_{E^{\vee n}} = \psi_{E^{\vee n}}$  for all  $n \geq 1$ . Moreover,  $\varphi$  is an isomorphism iff  $\varphi_{E^{\vee n}}$  is an isomorphism for all  $n \geq 1$ .*

Similarly, let  $\tilde{\varphi}, \tilde{\psi} : B \rightarrow C$  be two morphisms between bifunctors  $B, C : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{D}$  which both preserve filtered colimits and  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free coequalizers in each variable (i.e. the functors  $B(X, -)$  and  $B(-, X)$  do for all  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ , the same for  $C$ ). Then  $\tilde{\varphi} = \tilde{\psi}$  iff  $\tilde{\varphi}_{(E^{\vee n}, E^{\vee m})} = \tilde{\psi}_{(E^{\vee n}, E^{\vee m})}$  for all  $n, m \geq 1$ . Moreover,  $\tilde{\varphi}$  is an isomorphism iff  $\tilde{\varphi}_{(E^{\vee n}, E^{\vee m})}$  is an isomorphism for all  $n, m \geq 1$ .

**Proof.** This is standard, using Lemma 6.22(1) and recalling the following fact: for a set  $I$  let  $E_I = \bigvee_{i \in I} E$ , and let  $P$  be the set of finite subsets of  $I$ . Then  $E_I = \text{colim}_{J \in P} E_J$  is a filtered colimit.  $\square$

Now we wish to establish similar reduction properties for cross-effects. For this we must check that suitable preservation properties of a functor are inherited by its cross-effects:

**Proposition 6.26.** *If a functor  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ab}$  preserves filtered colimits and reflexive coequalizers then so do the functors  $cr_{n+1}(X_1, \dots, X_n, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \text{Ab}$  for  $n \geq 1$  and  $X_1, \dots, X_n \in \mathcal{C}$ .*

**Proof.** By induction it suffices to prove the case  $n = 1$ . Let  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ .

*Filtered colimits:* Let  $\mathcal{I}$  be a filtered category and  $D : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  be a diagram admitting a colimit in  $\mathcal{C}$ . Then  $X \vee \text{colim } D = \text{colim } D_1$  where  $D_1 : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is given by  $D_1(i) = X \vee D(i)$  for  $i \in \mathcal{I}$  and  $D_1(f) = 1 \vee D(f)$  for a morphism  $f$  in  $\mathcal{I}$ . Similarly we define diagrams  $D_2, D_3 : \mathcal{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  such

that  $D_2(i) = F(X) \oplus FD(i)$  and  $D_3(i) = F(X|D(i))$ . Writing  $r(i) = (r_{1*}^2, r_{2*}^2) : F(X \vee D(i)) \rightarrow F(X) \times FD(i)$  we have the following commutative diagram.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 F(X \vee \operatorname{colim} D) & \xrightarrow{(r_{1*}^2, r_{2*}^2)} & F(X) \times F(\operatorname{colim} D) \\
 \uparrow \cong & & \uparrow \cong \\
 F(\operatorname{colim} D_1) & & F(X) \oplus \operatorname{colim}(F \circ D) \\
 \uparrow \cong & \xrightarrow{\operatorname{colim} r(i)} & \uparrow \cong \\
 \operatorname{colim}(F \circ D_1) & \longrightarrow & \operatorname{colim} D_2.
 \end{array}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 F(X|\operatorname{colim} D) &\cong \operatorname{Ker}(\operatorname{colim}_{i \in \mathcal{I}} r(i)) \\
 &\cong \operatorname{colim}_{i \in \mathcal{I}} \operatorname{Ker}(r(i)) \quad \text{since } \mathcal{I} \text{ is filtered} \\
 &\cong \operatorname{colim} D_3,
 \end{aligned}$$

as asserted.

*Reflexive coequalizers:* Let  $Y_1 \xrightarrow[d_1]{d_0} Y_0 \xrightarrow{q} Y$  be a reflexive coequalizer in  $\mathcal{C}$  with com-

mun splitting  $s_0$  of  $d_0$  and  $d_1$ . Then  $X \vee Y_1 \xrightarrow[1 \vee d_1]{1 \vee d_0} X \vee Y_0 \xrightarrow{1 \vee q} X \vee Y$  also is a reflexive coequalizer in  $\mathcal{C}$  with commun splitting  $1 \vee s_0$  of  $1 \vee d_0$  and  $1 \vee d_1$ . Consider the following commutative diagram in  $Ab$ .

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 F(X|Y_1) & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & F(X|Y_0) & \xrightarrow{F(1|q)} & F(X|Y) & & \\
 \downarrow \iota_{(1,2)}^2 & & \downarrow \iota_{(1,2)}^2 & & \downarrow \iota_{(1,2)}^2 & & \\
 F(X \vee Y_1) & \xrightarrow{\beta} & F(X \vee Y_0) & \xrightarrow{F(1 \vee q)} & F(X \vee Y) & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
 \downarrow (r_{1*}^2, r_{2*}^2)^t & & \downarrow (r_{1*}^2, r_{2*}^2)^t & & \downarrow (r_{1*}^2, r_{2*}^2)^t & & \\
 F(X) \times F(Y_1) & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & F(X) \times F(Y_0) & \xrightarrow{1 \times F(q)} & F(X) \times F(Y) & \longrightarrow & 0
 \end{array} \tag{6.26.1}$$

where  $\alpha = F(1|d_0) - F(1|d_1)$ ,  $\beta = F(1 \vee d_0) - F(1 \vee d_1)$ ,  $\gamma = (1 \times F(d_0)) - (1 \times F(d_1)) = 0 \times (F(d_0) - F(d_1))$ . The columns are exact by (2.13.4), and the second and third row are exact

since  $F$  preserves reflexive coequalizers. Now replace the left half of diagram (6.26.1) by the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 F(X|Y_1) \oplus F(X) \oplus \text{Ker}(d_{0*} - d_{1*}) & \xrightarrow{(\alpha, 0, 0)} & F(X|Y_0) \\
 \downarrow (i_{(1,2)}^2, F(i_1), F(i_2))j & & \downarrow i_{(1,2)}^2 \\
 F(X \vee Y_1) & \xrightarrow{\beta} & F(X \vee Y_0) \\
 \downarrow \gamma(r_{1*}^2, r_{2*}^2)^t & & \downarrow (r_{1*}^2, r_{2*}^2)^t \\
 \text{Im}(\gamma) \hookrightarrow & \xrightarrow{\gamma'} & F(X) \times F(Y_0)
 \end{array}$$

with  $j : \text{Ker}(d_{0*} - d_{1*}) \hookrightarrow F(Y_1)$ . It commutes since  $\beta F(i_1) = F(i_1) - F(i_1) = 0$  and  $\beta F(i_2)j = (F(i_2d_0) - F(i_2d_1))j = F(i_2)(F(d_0) - F(d_1))j = 0$ , and both columns are exact. Thus applying the snake lemma to the lower half of the thus modified diagram (6.26.1) provides an exact sequence

$$F(X|Y_1) \oplus F(X) \oplus \text{Ker}(d_{0*} - d_{1*}) \xrightarrow{(\alpha, 0, 0)} F(X|Y_0) \xrightarrow{F(1|q)} F(X|Y) \longrightarrow \text{Coker}(\gamma(r_{1*}^2, r_{2*}^2)^t)$$

which amounts to the exact sequence  $F(X|Y_1) \xrightarrow{\alpha} F(X|Y_0) \xrightarrow{F(1|q)} F(X|Y) \rightarrow 0$ , as asserted.  $\square$

We now are ready to extend the computation of the cross-effect of the quadratic tensor product from  $E$ -free objects of finite rank to *all* objects in  $\mathcal{C}$ , as follows.

**Theorem 6.27.** *Suppose that  $\mathcal{C}$  is a pointed Mal'cev and Barr exact category with sums, and that  $E$  is a small regular projective generator of  $\mathcal{C}$ . Moreover, let  $M$  be a quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module relative to  $E$ . Then the natural isomorphism*

$$\gamma : (T_1U(X) \otimes T_1U(Y)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{\cong} cr_2(- \otimes M)(X, Y)$$

in Corollary 6.20 is valid for all objects  $X, Y$  in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

**Proof.** The functor  $- \otimes M$  preserves filtered colimits and  $E$ -saturated coequalizers by Theorem 6.24, hence reflexive coequalizers by Proposition 6.23 and by the hypothesis on  $\mathcal{C}$ . Thus by Proposition 6.26 the bifunctor  $cr_2(- \otimes M)$  preserves filtered colimits and reflexive coequalizers in both variables, in particular  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free coequalizers by Lemma 6.22(2), and so does the bifunctor  $(T_1U(-) \otimes T_1U(-)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} M_{ee}$ , see the proof of Theorem 6.24. So by Proposition 6.25 the natural map  $\gamma$  is an isomorphism for all  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$  since it is so when  $X = E^{\vee n}$ ,  $Y = E^{\vee m}$ ,  $n, m \geq 1$ , by Proposition 6.20.  $\square$

## 7. Equivalence between quadratic functors and quadratic $\mathcal{C}$ -modules

The aim of this section is to prove the following theorem which is the main result of this paper.

Let  $\text{QUAD}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  denote the category of reduced quadratic functors from  $\mathcal{C}$  to  $Ab$  which preserve filtered colimits and  $E$ -saturated coequalizers. Note that it follows from Proposition 6.25 that  $\text{QUAD}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  has small Hom-sets, i.e. the class of morphisms between any two objects is a small set. Also note that by Proposition 6.23 the  $E$ -saturated coequalizers in the definition of  $\text{QUAD}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  can be replaced by  $E$ -saturated  $E$ -free coequalizers, and by reflexive coequalizers if  $\mathcal{C}$  is Mal'cev and Barr exact.

**Theorem 7.1.** *Let  $\mathcal{C}$  be a pointed category with finite sums.*

(A) *If  $\mathcal{C}$  is a small category the functors*

$$\text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab) \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\mathbb{T}_2} \\ \xrightarrow{\mathbb{S}_2} \end{array} \mathcal{Q}\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$$

where  $\mathbb{S}_2$  is defined in Section 5.3 and  $\mathbb{T}_2(M) = - \otimes M$ , form a pair of adjoint functors extending  $\mathbb{T}_1$  and  $\mathbb{S}_1$  given in Proposition 3.11 (see also Proposition 5.17).

(B) *If  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$ , the functors  $\mathbb{S}_2$  and  $\mathbb{T}_2$  form a pair of adjoint equivalences.*

(C) *If  $\mathcal{C}$  has sums and if  $E$  is a small regular projective generator of  $\mathcal{C}$ , then the functors*

$$\text{QUAD}(\mathcal{C}, Ab) \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\mathbb{T}'_2} \\ \xrightarrow{\mathbb{S}'_2} \end{array} \mathcal{Q}\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$$

form a pair of adjoint equivalences where  $\mathbb{T}'_2$  is given by  $\mathbb{T}_2$  which actually takes values in  $\text{QUAD}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  by Theorem 6.24, and where  $\mathbb{S}'_2$  is the restriction of  $\mathbb{S}_2$ .

To prove this theorem we start by constructing the co-unit and prove that it is an isomorphism if  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$ , thanks to the computations of  $E \otimes M$  given in Proposition 6.11 and of the cross-effect of  $- \otimes M$  given in Corollary 6.20. Next we construct the unit of this adjunction and prove that it is an isomorphism. Assertion (C) then follows from Proposition 6.25.

### 7.1. The co-unit of the adjunction

The co-unit of the adjunction of Theorem 7.1 is a natural map of quadratic functors  $\epsilon : - \otimes \mathbb{S}_2(F) \rightarrow F$ . To define this map we need a series of lemmas.

**Lemma 7.2.** For  $F \in \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Ab})$ , there exists a natural transformation  $\overline{u'_F} : (T_2U)(-) \otimes_{\Lambda} F(E) \rightarrow F(-)$  such that we have the following natural commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U(X) \otimes_{\Lambda} F(E) & \xrightarrow{(u'_F)_X} & F(X) \\ & \searrow (t_2 \otimes 1)_X & \nearrow (\overline{u'_F})_X \\ & (T_2U)(X) \otimes_{\Lambda} F(E) & \end{array}$$

for  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  and  $u'_F$  the co-unit of the adjunction between  $\mathbb{S}$  and  $\mathbb{T}$  given in Proposition 3.5.

**Proof.** This is immediate from the universal property of  $t_2$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 7.3.** For  $F \in \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Ab})$ , there exists a morphism  $(\overline{S_2^F})_X : F(X|X)_{\mathfrak{S}_2} \rightarrow F(X)$  making the following diagram commutative

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(X|X) & \xrightarrow{(S_2^F)_X} & F(X) \\ & \searrow \pi & \nearrow (\overline{S_2^F})_X \\ & F(X|X)_{\mathfrak{S}_2} & \end{array}$$

for  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ .

**Proof.** To prove that  $\overline{S_2^F}$  exists we have to prove that  $S_2^F T^F = S_2^F$  where  $T^F$  is the involution of  $F(-|-)$ . Recall that  $T^F$  is defined by the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} F(X|X) & \xrightarrow{\iota_{(1,2)}^2} & F(X \vee X) \\ T^F \downarrow & & \downarrow F(\tau) \\ F(X|X) & \xrightarrow{\iota_{(1,2)}^2} & F(X \vee X) \end{array}$$

where  $\tau$  is the canonical switch. Thus:

$$(S_2^F)_X T^F = F(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 T^F = F(\nabla^2 \tau) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 = F(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 = (S_2^F)_X. \quad \square$$

**Lemma 7.4.** For  $F \in \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Ab})$ , there exists a natural transformation of functors:

$$\overline{u'_{cr(F)}} : (((T_1U)(-) \otimes (T_1U)(-)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} F(E|E)) \Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2} \rightarrow (cr_2 F(-, -) \Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathfrak{S}_2}$$



where  $\Delta_{\mathcal{C}} : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$  is the diagonal functor, making the following diagram naturally commutative.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} ((T_1 U)(X) \otimes (T_1 U)(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} F(E|E) & \xrightarrow{(u'_{cr_2(F)})_{X,X}} & F(X|X) \\ \pi \downarrow & & \pi \downarrow \\ (((T_1 U)(X) \otimes (T_1 U)(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} F(E|E))_{\mathfrak{S}_2} & \xrightarrow{(\overline{u'_{cr_2(F)}})_{X,X}} & (F(X|X))_{\mathfrak{S}_2}. \end{array}$$

Here  $X \in \mathcal{C}$ , and  $((T_1 U)(X) \otimes (T_1 U)(X)) \otimes_{\Lambda \otimes \Lambda} F(E|E) \xrightarrow{(u'_{cr_2(F)})_{X,X}} F(X|X)$  is the co-unit of the adjunction in Proposition 3.21.

**Proof.** For  $x, y \in U(X)$  and  $m \in F(E|E)$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} T^F u'_{cr_2(F)}(t_1(f) \otimes t_1(g) \otimes m) &= T^F (cr_2 F(f, g))(m) \\ &= (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} F(\tau) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2 F(f, g)(m) \\ &= (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} F(\tau) F(f \vee g) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(m) \\ &= (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} F(g \vee f) F(\tau) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(m) \\ &= cr_2 F(g, f) (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} F(\tau) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(m) \\ &= cr_2 F(g, f) (T^F(m)) \\ &= u'_{cr_2(F)}(t_1(g) \otimes t_1(f) \otimes T^F(m)) \\ &= u'_{cr_2(F)}(t(t_1(f) \otimes t_1(g) \otimes m)). \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $u'_{cr_2(F)}$  is  $\mathfrak{S}_2$ -equivariant and hence passes to coinvariants.  $\square$

We deduce the following proposition.

**Proposition 7.5.** For  $F \in \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, \text{Ab})$ , there exists a natural map  $\epsilon : - \otimes \mathfrak{S}_2(F) \rightarrow F$  given by:

$$\epsilon_X = ((\overline{S_2^F})_X (\overline{u'_{cr_2(F)}})_X, (\overline{u'_F})_X) : X \otimes \mathfrak{S}_2(F) \rightarrow F(X)$$

for  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  such that  $\epsilon_X \hat{\phi} = (\overline{S_2^F})_X (\overline{u'_{cr_2(F)}})_X$  and  $\epsilon_X \hat{\psi} = (\overline{u'_F})_X$ ; here the natural maps  $\overline{u'_F}$ ,  $\overline{S_2^F}$  and  $\overline{u'_{cr_2(F)}}$  are defined in Lemmas 7.2, 7.3 and 7.4 respectively and the maps  $\hat{\phi}$  and  $\hat{\psi}$  appear in the pushout diagram of Proposition 6.2.

**Proof.** To prove the existence of  $\epsilon_X$  it is sufficient to show that  $(\overline{S_2^F})_X (\overline{u'_{cr_2(F)}})_X \psi = (\overline{u'_F})_X \phi$  where  $\psi$  and  $\phi$  are the maps in the pushout diagram of Proposition 6.2.

For  $f \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$  and  $m \in F(E|E)$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
(\overline{S_2^F})_X (\overline{u'_{cr_2(F)}})_X \pi(\delta \otimes 1)(f \otimes m) &= (\overline{S_2^F})_X \pi(u'_{cr_2(F)})_X (\delta \otimes 1)(f \otimes m) \quad \text{by Lemma 7.4} \\
&= (S_2^F)_X (u'_{cr_2(F)})_X (\delta \otimes 1)(f \otimes m) \quad \text{by Lemma 7.3} \\
&= (S_2^F)_X (u'_{cr_2(F)})_X (t_1(f) \otimes t_1(f) \otimes m) \quad \text{by definition of } \delta \\
&= (S_2^F)_X cr_2 F(f, f)(m) \quad \text{by definition of } u'_{cr_2(F)} \\
&= F(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2 F(f, f)(m) \quad \text{by definition of } S_2^F \\
&= F(\nabla^2) F(f \vee f) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(m) \quad \text{by definition of } cr_2 F(f, f) \\
&= F(\nabla^2(f \vee f)) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(m) \quad \text{by functoriality} \\
&= F(f \nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(m) \quad \text{since } \nabla^2(f \vee f) = f \nabla^2 \\
&= F(f) F(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(m) \quad \text{by functoriality} \\
&= (u'_F)_X (f \otimes F(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(m)) \quad \text{by definition of } u'_F \\
&= (\overline{u'_F})_X (t_2 \otimes Id)(f \otimes F(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(m)) \quad \text{by Lemma 7.2} \\
&= (\overline{u'_F})_X (t_2 \otimes Id)(f \otimes S_2^F(m)) \quad \text{by definition of } S_2^F \\
&= (\overline{u'_F})_X (t_2 \otimes S_2^F)(f \otimes m).
\end{aligned}$$

For  $f, g \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$ ,  $\xi \in \mathcal{C}(E, E \vee E)$ ,  $x = (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1}(\xi - i_{1*}^2 r_{1*}^2(\xi) - i_{2*}^2 r_{2*}^2(\xi))$  ( $x \in U(E|E)$  by (2.13.5)) and  $a \in F(E)$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
&(\overline{S_2^F})_X (\overline{u'_{cr_2(F)}})_X \psi_1(f \otimes g \otimes x \otimes a) \\
&= (\overline{S_2^F})_X (\overline{u'_{cr_2(F)}})_X \pi(t_1 \otimes t_1 \otimes (H^F)_E(t_{11} \otimes 1))(f \otimes g \otimes x \otimes a) \\
&= (S_2^F)_X (u'_{cr_2(F)})_X (\bar{f} \otimes \bar{g} \otimes (H^F)_E(t_{11} \otimes 1)(x \otimes a)) \quad \text{by Lemmas 7.3 and 7.4} \\
&= (S_2^F)_X (u'_{cr_2(F)})_X (\bar{f} \otimes \bar{g} \otimes (cr_2(u'_F))_E(x \otimes a)) \quad \text{by Lemma 5.15} \\
&= (S_2^F)_X cr_2 F(f, g)(cr_2(u'_F))_E(x \otimes a) \quad \text{by definition of } u'_{cr_2(F)} \\
&= F(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2 F(f, g)(cr_2(u'_F))_E(x \otimes a) \\
&= F(\nabla^2) F(f \vee g)(u'_F)_E(\iota_{(1,2)}^2 x \otimes a) \\
&= F(\nabla^2) F(f \vee g) F(\iota_{(1,2)}^2 x)(a) \quad \text{by definition of } u'_F \\
&= F(\nabla^2(f \vee g) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 x)(a) \quad \text{by functoriality} \\
&= (u'_F)_X (\nabla^2(f \vee g) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 x \otimes a) \quad \text{by definition of } u'_F \\
&= (u'_F)_X (U(\nabla^2) U(f \vee g) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 x \otimes a) \\
&= (u'_F)_X (U(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2 U(f, g) x \otimes a) \\
&= (\overline{u'_F})_X (t_2 \otimes 1)(U(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2 U(f, g) x \otimes a) \quad \text{by Lemma 7.2}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= (\overline{u'_F})_X (t_2 S_2^U cr_2 U(f, g)(x) \otimes a) \\
 &= (\overline{u'_F})_X \phi_1(f \otimes g \otimes x \otimes a). \quad \square
 \end{aligned}$$

In the following proposition we consider the cross-effect of  $\epsilon$ .

**Proposition 7.6.** *Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Ab$  be a quadratic functor. Then the natural map:*

$$cr_2(\epsilon)_{X,Y} : cr_2(- \otimes \mathbb{S}_2(F))(X, Y) \rightarrow cr_2 F(X, Y)$$

*is an isomorphism for all  $X, Y \in \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$ .*

**Proof.** For  $X, Y$  arbitrary objects of  $\mathcal{C}$  we have the following diagram whose right hand square commutes by definition of  $cr_2(\epsilon)_{X,Y}$ :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 cr_2(\mathbb{T}_{11}(F(E|E))\Delta_{\mathcal{C}})_{\mathbb{S}_2}(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{cr_2(\hat{\phi})} & cr_2(- \otimes \mathbb{S}_2(F))(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{\iota_{(1,2)}^2} & (- \otimes \mathbb{S}_2(F))(X \vee Y) \\
 \uparrow \iota_{(1,2)}^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(F(E|E))(i_1, i_2) \simeq & & \downarrow cr_2(\epsilon)_{X,Y} & & \downarrow (\epsilon)_{X \vee Y} \\
 \mathbb{T}_{11}(F(E|E))(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{u'_{cr_2 F}} & cr_2 F(X, Y) & \xrightarrow{\iota_{(1,2)}^2} & F(X \vee Y).
 \end{array}$$

In the following, we prove that the left hand square is commutative. Since  $\iota_{(1,2)}^2$  is injective, it is sufficient to prove that

$$\iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2(\epsilon)_{X,Y} cr_2(\hat{\phi})(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(F(E|E))(i_1, i_2) = \iota_{(1,2)}^2 u'_{cr_2 F}.$$

For  $f \in \mathcal{C}(E, X)$ ,  $g \in \mathcal{C}(E, Y)$  and  $m \in F(E|E)$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2(\epsilon)_{X,Y} cr_2(\hat{\phi})(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi \mathbb{T}_{11}(F(E|E))(i_1, i_2)(\bar{f} \otimes \bar{g} \otimes m) \\
 &= (\epsilon)_{X \vee Y} \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2(\hat{\phi})(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} \pi(\bar{i}_1 \bar{f} \otimes \bar{i}_2 \bar{g} \otimes m) \\
 &= (\epsilon)_{X \vee Y} \hat{\phi} \pi(\bar{i}_1 \bar{f} \otimes \bar{i}_2 \bar{g} \otimes m) \\
 &= (\overline{S_2^F})_{X \vee Y} (\overline{u'_{cr(F)}})_{X \vee Y} \pi(\bar{i}_1 \bar{f} \otimes \bar{i}_2 \bar{g} \otimes m) \quad \text{by definition of } \epsilon \text{ given in Proposition 7.5} \\
 &= (S_2^F)_{X \vee Y} (u'_{cr(F)})_{X \vee Y} (\bar{i}_1 \bar{f} \otimes \bar{i}_2 \bar{g} \otimes m) \\
 &= (S_2^F)_{X \vee Y} cr_2 F(i_1 f, i_2 g)(m) \quad \text{by definition of } u'_{cr(F)} \text{ given in Proposition 3.21} \\
 &= F(\nabla^2) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2 F(i_1 f, i_2 g)(m) \quad \text{by definition of } S_2^F \\
 &= F(\nabla^2) F(i_1 f \vee i_2 g) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(m) \\
 &= F(f \vee g) \iota_{(1,2)}^2(m) \quad \text{since } \nabla^2(i_1 f \vee i_2 g) = f \vee g \\
 &= \iota_{(1,2)}^2 cr_2 F(f, g)(m) \\
 &= \iota_{(1,2)}^2 u'_{cr_2(F)}(\bar{f} \otimes \bar{g} \otimes m) \quad \text{by definition of } u'_{cr_2(F)}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Now let  $X, Y \in \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$ . Since  $F$  is quadratic,  $cr_2(F)$  is bilinear, so by Theorem 3.22,  $(u'_{cr_2(F)})_{X,Y}$  is an isomorphism. By commutativity of the left hand square this implies that  $cr_2(\hat{\phi})$  is injective and by Lemma 6.6 we know that  $cr_2(\hat{\phi})$  is surjective. Thus  $cr_2(\hat{\phi})$  is an isomorphism, hence so is  $cr(\epsilon)_{X,Y}$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 7.7.** *If  $\mathcal{C} = \langle E \rangle_{\mathcal{C}}$ , for  $F \in \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  the natural map  $\epsilon : - \otimes M^F \rightarrow F$  is a natural equivalence.*

**Proof.** Since  $F$  is quadratic by hypothesis and  $- \otimes M^F$  is quadratic by Proposition 6.5, it is sufficient to prove that  $(\epsilon)_E$  and  $cr_2(\epsilon)_{(E,E)}$  are isomorphisms according to Proposition 1.17.

By Lemma 6.16 we know that  $(\epsilon)_E$  is an isomorphism since

$$((\overline{S_2^F})_E (\overline{u'_{cr(F)}})_E, (\overline{u'_F})_E) = ((\overline{S_2^F})_E \overline{\mu_{ee}}, \overline{\mu_e}).$$

By Proposition 7.6 we know that  $cr_2(\epsilon)_{(E,E)}$  is an isomorphism.  $\square$

**Proposition 7.8.** *The natural map  $\epsilon : - \otimes M^F \rightarrow F$  is the co-unit of the adjunction given in Theorem 7.1.*

**Proof.** For  $M \in Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$  and  $\alpha : - \otimes M \rightarrow F$  we want to prove that there exists a unique  $\beta : M \rightarrow M^F$  such that  $\epsilon(- \otimes M)(\beta) = \alpha$ . Since  $\epsilon$  is a natural equivalence the latter relation implies that:  $(- \otimes M)(\beta) = \epsilon^{-1}\alpha$ . One can check that  $\beta$  such that  $\beta_e = \alpha_e(\overline{P\mu_{ee}}, \overline{\mu_e})^{-1}$  and  $\beta_{ee} = cr_2(\alpha)_{E,E} \gamma_{E,E}(\mu_{ee})^{-1}$  is the unique solution.  $\square$

## 7.2. The unit of the adjunction

**Definition 7.9.** Let  $\eta : Id_{Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E} \rightarrow \mathbb{S}_2\mathbb{T}_2$  be the natural map such that, for  $M \in Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$ ,  $\eta_M : M \rightarrow \mathbb{S}_2\mathbb{T}_2(M)$  is given by  $(\eta_M)_e = (\overline{P\mu_{ee}}, \overline{\mu_e})^{-1}$  and  $(\eta_M)_{ee} = (\gamma)_{E,E} \mu_{ee}^{-1}$  where  $\mu_{ee}$  is the canonical isomorphism and  $\gamma$  is the natural equivalence of Corollary 6.20.

**Proposition 7.10.** *The natural map  $\eta : Id_{Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E} \rightarrow \mathbb{S}_2\mathbb{T}_2$  is a natural equivalence.*

**Proof.** By Lemma 6.15 and Corollary 6.20,  $(\eta_M)_e$  and  $(\eta_M)_{ee}$  are isomorphisms.  $\square$

**Proposition 7.11.** *The natural map  $\eta : Id_{Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E} \rightarrow \mathbb{S}_2\mathbb{T}_2$  is the unit of the adjunction in Theorem 7.1.*

**Proof.** For  $F \in \text{Quad}(\mathcal{C}, Ab)$  and  $\alpha : M \rightarrow M^F$  a morphism in  $Q\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{C}}^E$ , we want to prove that there exists a unique natural map  $\beta : - \otimes M \rightarrow F$  such that  $\mathbb{S}_2(\beta)\eta_M = \alpha$ . Let  $\beta$  be the composition  $\epsilon(- \otimes \alpha)$ . We check that  $\beta$  is the unique solution of  $\mathbb{S}_2(\beta)\eta_M = \alpha$ .  $\square$

Together with Propositions 7.10, 7.8 and 7.7 this achieves the proof of the assertions (A) and (B) of Theorem 7.1; together with Proposition 6.25 these then imply assertion (C).

## 8. Application to theories of cogroups

In this section, we apply Theorem 7.1 to the particular case where  $E$  has a cogroup structure in  $\mathcal{C}$ .

This is the case when  $\mathcal{C}$  is a theory of cogroups  $\mathcal{T}$  with generator  $E$ , or when  $\mathcal{C}$  is a category of models  $\mathcal{V}$  of a pointed theory  $\mathcal{T}$  where a group law is part of the structure, and  $E$  is the free object of rank 1. The first case (which is generic in view of Theorem 7.1) is considered in [4] where the authors define, in Proposition 3.6, a functor:

$$u : \text{Quad}(\mathcal{T}, Gr) \rightarrow \text{Square}$$

to the category Square of so-called square groups, sending  $F \in \text{Quad}(\mathcal{T}, Gr)$  to the square group  $u(F)(E) = (F(E) \xrightarrow{H} F(E|E) \xrightarrow{P} F(E))$ , see Definition 8.12 below. They prove that  $u$  is an equivalence of categories when  $\mathcal{T}$  is the category  $\langle \mathbb{Z} \rangle_{Gr}$  of free groups of finite rank. This is no longer true for more general theories of cogroups, even when restricting to quadratic functors with values in  $Ab$ . In fact, we here show how for general  $\mathcal{T}$  the structure of square group has to be enriched in order to obtain an equivalence with quadratic functors from  $\mathcal{T}$  to  $Ab$ . In particular, a second map relating  $F(E)$  to  $F(E|E)$  has to be added to the picture; in the case where  $\mathcal{T} = \langle \mathbb{Z} \rangle_{Gr}$  this turns out to provide a new interpretation of the map  $\Delta$  associated with a square group in [4]. Recall that a theory of cogroups is a pointed category  $\mathcal{T}$  with finite sums such that each object  $X$  has the structure of a cogroup given by the maps  $\mu : X \rightarrow X \vee X$  and  $\tau : X \rightarrow X$ . Then, for  $X, Y \in \mathcal{T}$ ,  $\mathcal{T}(X, Y)$  is a group with  $f \bullet g = (f, g)\mu$  and  $f^{-1} = f\tau$ . The identity element of  $\bullet$  is the null map 0. Moreover, for  $Z \in \mathcal{T}$  and  $h \in \mathcal{T}(Y, Z)$  the map  $h_* : \mathcal{T}(X, Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{T}(X, Z)$  is a homomorphism of groups.

**Notation.** For brevity, we write in this section  $i_1, i_2, r_1$  and  $r_2$  instead of  $i_1^2, i_2^2, r_1^2$  and  $r_2^2$ , respectively.

For a theory of cogroups  $\mathcal{T}$  we have a simpler description of a quadratic  $\mathcal{T}$ -module relative to  $E$  given in the following theorem. In particular, note that the functor  $U$  disappears from the picture.

**Theorem 8.1.** *Let  $\mathcal{T}$  be a theory of cogroups. The category of quadratic  $\mathcal{T}$ -modules relative to  $E$  is equivalent to the category of diagrams of group homomorphisms:*

$$M = \left( \begin{array}{ccc} M_e & & \\ & \searrow^{H_1} & \\ & & M_{ee} \xrightarrow{P} M_e \\ & \nearrow_{H_2} & \\ T_{11}cr_2(\mathcal{T}(E, -))(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} \text{coker}(P) & & \end{array} \right)$$

where

- $M_e$  is a left  $\Lambda$ -module;
- $M_{ee}$  is a left  $\overline{\Lambda} \otimes \overline{\Lambda}$ -module;

- $P : M_{ee} \rightarrow M_e$  is a homomorphism of  $\Lambda$ -modules with respect to the diagonal action of  $\Lambda$  on  $M_{ee}$ ;
- $H_1$  is a homomorphism of abelian groups;
- $H_2$  is a homomorphism of  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -modules,

satisfying the following relations for  $a \in M_e$ ,  $m \in M_{ee}$ ,  $\gamma \in cr_2(\mathcal{T}(E, -))(E, E)$ ,  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{T}(E, E)$ :

$$(T1) \quad PH_1P = 2P,$$

$$(T2) \quad H_1P((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})m) - (\bar{\beta} \otimes \bar{\alpha})H_1P(m) = (\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})m - (\bar{\beta} \otimes \bar{\alpha})m,$$

$$(T3) \quad H_1PH_1(a) = 2H_1(a) + H_2(t_{11}([i_2, i_1]) \otimes \bar{a}),$$

$$(T4) \quad H_1PH_2(t_{11}\gamma \otimes \bar{a}) = H_2(t_{11}(\gamma \bullet \tau\gamma) \otimes \bar{a}),$$

$$(T5) \quad (\nabla^2\gamma \bullet \alpha \bullet \beta)a = \alpha a + \beta a + P((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})H_1(a)) + PH_2(t_{11}\gamma \otimes \bar{a}),$$

$$(T6) \quad H_1(\alpha a) = H_2(t_{11}h(\alpha) \otimes \bar{a}) + (\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\alpha})H_1(a),$$

where  $[i_2, i_1] = i_2 \bullet i_1 \bullet (i_2)^{-1} \bullet (i_1)^{-1}$ ,  $\tau$  is the canonical switch of  $E \vee E$  and  $h : \mathcal{T}(E, E) \rightarrow \mathcal{T}(E, E|E)$  is given by

$$h(\alpha) = (\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1}(((i_1 \bullet i_2)\alpha) \bullet (i_2\alpha)^{-1} \bullet (i_1\alpha)^{-1}).$$

Note that the map  $h$  describes the deviation of endomorphisms of  $E$  from being morphisms of cogroups.

The plan of the proof of Theorem 8.1 is as follows: we first compute, in several steps, the symmetric bifunctor  $T_{11}(cr_2U)$ . The result is then used to split up the map  $\hat{H}$  in a given quadratic  $\mathcal{T}$ -module into the two maps  $H_1$  and  $H_2$  occurring in Theorem 8.1, and to translate the properties of the map  $\hat{H}$  in terms of  $H_1$  and  $H_2$ , which leads to the relations (T1)–(T6).

As a main tool we need some elementary facts about augmentation ideals of group rings.

### 8.1. Augmentation ideals: recollections and action of the linearization functor

Recall that the augmentation ideal  $IG$  of a group  $G$  is the kernel of the augmentation map  $\epsilon : \mathbb{Z}[G] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  of the group ring  $\mathbb{Z}[G]$ .  $IG$  is a free  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module generated by the elements  $g - 1$  for  $g \in G \setminus \{1\}$ . For a subset  $H$  of  $G$  we denote by  $IH$  the subgroup of  $IG$  generated by the elements of the form  $h - 1$  for  $h \in H$ . The key ideas of this section are to use the natural isomorphism  $\mathcal{E} : I(\mathcal{T}(E, X)) \rightarrow U(X)$  such that  $\mathcal{E}(f - 1) = f$  and the trivial but useful formula  $a.b - 1 = (a - 1) + (b - 1) + (a - 1).(b - 1)$  in  $IG$ . Moreover, we need the following elementary result which is well known.

**Proposition 8.2.** *For  $G \in Gr$  we have a natural isomorphism of abelian groups:*

$$\theta : IG/(IG)^2 \xrightarrow{\cong} G/[G, G]$$

such that for  $g \in G$ ,  $\theta(\overline{g - 1}) = \bar{g}$ .

## 8.2. Computation of $cr_2U(X, Y)$

In a first step we compute the cross-effect of the functor  $U$ , which by the isomorphism  $\mathcal{E}$  above comes down to computing the cross-effect of the composite functor  $IT(E, -)$  where  $I : Gr \rightarrow Ab$  is given by taking the augmentation ideal. More generally, we have the following result.

**Proposition 8.3.** *Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Gr$  be a reduced functor. There is an isomorphism of bifunctors  $\mathcal{T} \times \mathcal{T} \rightarrow Ab$ :*

$$\Theta : I(F(X|Y)) \oplus (IF(X) \otimes IF(Y)) \oplus (I(F(X|Y)) \otimes I(F(X) \times F(Y))) \xrightarrow{\cong} cr_2(IF)(X, Y)$$

given by

$$\begin{aligned}\Theta(x - 1, 0, 0) &= x - 1, \\ \Theta(0, (y - 1) \otimes (z - 1), 0) &= (i_{1*}y - 1) \cdot (i_{2*}z - 1), \\ \Theta(0, 0, (u - 1) \otimes (v - 1)) &= (u - 1) \cdot (sv - 1),\end{aligned}$$

where  $s : F(X) \times F(Y) \rightarrow F(X \vee Y)$  is the map defined by  $s(x, y) = i_{1*x} \cdot i_{2*y}$ , the point denoting the group structure on  $F(X \vee Y)$ .

The proof requires the following elementary fact.

**Lemma 8.4.** *Let  $G$  be a group and  $H, K$  be two subsets of  $G$  containing 1 such that each  $g \in G$  admits a unique decomposition  $g = h_g k_g$  with  $h_g \in H$  and  $k_g \in K$ . Then the map:*

$$\phi : IH \oplus IK \oplus (IH \otimes IK) \rightarrow IG$$

given by  $\phi(h - 1, 0, 0) = h - 1$ ,  $\phi(0, k - 1, 0) = k - 1$  and  $\phi(0, 0, (h' - 1) \otimes (k' - 1)) = (h' - 1) \cdot (k' - 1)$  is an isomorphism of  $\mathbb{Z}$ -modules.

**Proof.** We define

$$\psi : IG \rightarrow IH \oplus IK \oplus (IH \otimes IK)$$

by

$$\psi(g - 1) = (h_g - 1, k_g - 1, (h_g - 1) \otimes (k_g - 1)).$$

One readily checks that  $\psi$  is the inverse of  $\phi$ , using the fact that the unique decomposition of  $h \in H \subset G$  (resp.  $k \in K \subset G$ ) in  $HK$  is  $h \cdot 1$  (resp.  $1 \cdot k$ ).  $\square$

**Proof of Proposition 8.3.** For  $X, Y \in \mathcal{C}$  we have a short exact sequence:

$$1 \rightarrow F(X|Y) \rightarrow F(X \vee Y) \xrightarrow{(r_{1*}, r_{2*})^t} F(X) \times F(Y) \rightarrow 1.$$

Since  $i_{1*}$  and  $i_{2*}$  are group morphisms we have  $s(1, 1) = 1$  and since  $F$  is reduced,  $s$  is a set-theoretic section of  $(r_{1*}, r_{2*})^t$  natural in  $X$  and  $Y$ . Hence the subsets  $H = F(X|Y)$  and  $K = s(F(X) \times F(Y))$  of the group  $F(X \vee Y)$  satisfy the conditions of Lemma 8.4 and we have an isomorphism of bifunctors:

$$I(F(X \vee Y)) \simeq I(F(X|Y)) \oplus I(s(F(X) \times F(Y))) \oplus (I(F(X|Y)) \otimes I(s(F(X) \times F(Y)))).$$

Since the map  $s$  is a bijection of  $F(X) \times F(Y)$  onto the set  $K$ , applying Proposition 8.4 to the product group  $F(X) \times F(Y)$  provides an isomorphism of bifunctors:

$$\begin{aligned} I(F(X \vee Y)) &\simeq I(F(X|Y)) \oplus (IF(X) \oplus IF(Y) \oplus IF(X) \otimes IF(Y)) \\ &\quad \oplus (I(F(X|Y)) \otimes I(F(X) \times F(Y))). \end{aligned}$$

Now the assertion follows from (2.13.7).  $\square$

The following application of Proposition 8.3 illustrates the power of the linearization functor  $T_1$ .

**Proposition 8.5.** *Let  $F : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Gr$  be a reduced functor. Then we have a natural isomorphism:*

$$\theta^F : T_1(IF) \rightarrow T_1F$$

defined by  $\theta^F(t_1(x - 1)) = t_1(x)$  for  $X \in \mathcal{C}$  and  $x \in F(X)$ .

**Proof.** By the isomorphism  $\Theta$  in Proposition 8.3 we have

$$\begin{aligned} T_1(IF)(X) &= \text{coker}(cr_2(IF)(X, X) \xrightarrow{S_2^{IF(-)}} IF(X)) \\ &= \text{coker}(I(F(X|X)) \oplus (IF(X) \otimes IF(X)) \oplus (I(F(X|X)) \otimes I(F(X) \times F(X)) \\ &\quad \xrightarrow{S_2^{IF(-)} \Theta} IF(X))), \\ S_2^{IF(-)} \Theta(x - 1, 0, 0) &= S_2^{IF(-)}(x - 1) = I(S_2^F)(x - 1), \\ S_2^{IF(-)} \Theta(0, (y - 1) \otimes (z - 1), 0) &= S_2^{IF(-)}((i_{1*}y - 1) \cdot (i_{2*}z - 1)) \\ &= IF(\nabla^2)((i_{1*}y - 1) \cdot (i_{2*}z - 1)) \\ &= (\nabla_*^2 i_{1*}y - 1) \cdot (\nabla_*^2 i_{2*}z - 1) = (y - 1) \cdot (z - 1) \in (IF(X))^2, \\ S_2^{IF(-)} \Theta(0, 0, (u - 1) \otimes (v - 1)) &= IF(\nabla^2)((u - 1) \cdot (sv - 1)) = (\nabla^2 u - 1) \cdot (\nabla^2 sv - 1) \in (IF(X))^2. \end{aligned}$$

By Proposition 8.2 we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} T_1(IF)(X) &= IF(X) / (\text{Im}(I(S_2^F)) + (IF(X))^2) \simeq F(X)^{ab} / ab(\text{Im}(S_2^F)) \\ &\simeq (F(X) / \text{Im}(S_2^F))^{ab} \simeq (T_1F(X))^{ab} \simeq T_1F(X) \quad \text{by Proposition 2.1} \end{aligned}$$



where  $-^{ab} : Gr \rightarrow Ab$  is the abelianization functor and  $ab : F(X) \rightarrow F(X)^{ab}$ .  $\square$

### 8.3. Computation of $T_{11}(cr_2U)(X, Y)$

In order to compute  $T_{11}(cr_2U)(E, E)$  as a right  $\Lambda$ -module we apply the results of Section 8.2 to the reduced functor  $\mathcal{T}(E, -) : \mathcal{C} \rightarrow Gr$ .

**Notation 8.6.** In the sequel we use the following abbreviations:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y) &:= cr_2(\mathcal{T}(E, -))(X, Y); \\ T_1\mathcal{T}(E, X) &:= T_1(\mathcal{T}(E, -))(X); \\ T_1I\mathcal{T}(E, X) &:= T_1(I\mathcal{T}(E, -))(X); \\ T_{11}\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y) &:= T_{11}(cr_2(\mathcal{T}(E, -)))(X, Y); \\ T_{11}I\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y) &:= T_{11}(Icr_2(\mathcal{T}(E, -)))(X, Y).\end{aligned}$$

**Proposition 8.7.** *There is a binatural isomorphism:*

$$\Upsilon : T_{11}\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y) \oplus (T_1\mathcal{T}(E, X) \otimes T_1\mathcal{T}(E, Y)) \xrightarrow{\cong} T_{11}cr_2(I\mathcal{T}(E, -))(X, Y) \quad (8.7.1)$$

such that

$$\Upsilon(t_{11}\xi, t_1f \otimes t_1g) = t_{11}(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1}((\xi - 1) + (i_1f - 1) \bullet (i_2g - 1)).$$

Moreover, the right action of  $\Lambda$  on  $T_{11}cr_2(I\mathcal{T}(E, -))(X, Y)$  induced by precomposition in  $\mathcal{T}$  is given on the above components by

$$\Upsilon(t_{11}\xi, 0). \alpha = \Upsilon(t_{11}(\xi\alpha), 0), \quad (8.7.2)$$

$$\Upsilon(0, t_1f \otimes t_1g). \alpha = \Upsilon(t_{11}((f \vee g)h(\alpha)), t_1(f\alpha) \otimes t_1(g\alpha)) \quad (8.7.3)$$

for  $\alpha \in \mathcal{T}(E, E)$ .

**Proof.** Taking  $F = \mathcal{T}(E, -)$  in Proposition 8.3 gives an isomorphism of bifunctors

$$\begin{aligned}I(\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)) \oplus (I(\mathcal{T}(E, X)) \otimes I(\mathcal{T}(E, Y))) \oplus (I(\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)) \otimes I(\mathcal{T}(E, X) \times \mathcal{T}(E, Y))) \\ \xrightarrow{\Theta} cr_2(I\mathcal{T}(E, -))(X, Y).\end{aligned}$$

We have the following binatural isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned}I(\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)) \otimes I(\mathcal{T}(E, X) \times \mathcal{T}(E, Y)) &\simeq (I(\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)) \otimes I(\mathcal{T}(E, X))) \\ &\oplus (I(\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)) \otimes I(\mathcal{T}(E, Y))) \\ &\oplus (I(\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)) \otimes I(\mathcal{T}(E, X)) \otimes I(\mathcal{T}(E, Y))).\end{aligned}$$

Thus  $I(\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)) \otimes I(\mathcal{T}(E, X) \times \mathcal{T}(E, Y))$  is a sum of bifunctors which are diagonalizable as functors in  $X$  or in  $Y$ . So Proposition 2.4 implies that  $T_{11}(I(\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)) \otimes I(\mathcal{T}(E, X) \times \mathcal{T}(E, Y))) = 0$ . Using Proposition 8.5 and Example 1.15 the isomorphism  $T_{11}(\Theta)$  thus becomes the desired isomorphism  $\Upsilon$ .

The structure of right  $\Lambda$ -module on  $T_{11}I\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)$  is induced by the inclusion  $\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y) \rightarrow \mathcal{T}(E, X \vee Y)$ ; this implies relation (8.7.2). To prove relation (8.7.3) let  $f \in \mathcal{T}(E, X)$  and  $g \in \mathcal{T}(E, Y)$ . Then:

$$\begin{aligned} \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \Theta(0, (f-1) \otimes (g-1), 0) \cdot \alpha &= ((i_1 f - 1) \bullet (i_2 g - 1)) \cdot \alpha \\ &= ((i_1 f \bullet i_2 g - 1) - (i_1 f - 1) - (i_2 g - 1)) \cdot \alpha \\ &= ((i_1 f \bullet i_2 g) \circ \alpha - 1) - (i_1 f \circ \alpha - 1) - (i_2 g \circ \alpha - 1) \\ &= (\omega \bullet (i_1 f \alpha) \bullet (i_2 g \alpha) - 1) - (i_1 f \alpha - 1) - (i_2 g \alpha - 1) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\omega = ((i_1 f \bullet i_2 g) \circ \alpha) \bullet (i_2 g \circ \alpha)^{-1} \bullet (i_1 f \circ \alpha)^{-1}$ . Hence:

$$\begin{aligned} \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \Theta(0, (f-1) \otimes (g-1), 0) \cdot \alpha &= (\omega - 1) + ((i_1 f \alpha) \bullet (i_2 g \alpha) - 1) + (\omega - 1) \bullet ((i_1 f \alpha) \bullet (i_2 g \alpha) - 1) - (i_1 f \alpha - 1) \\ &\quad - (i_2 g \alpha - 1) \\ &= (\omega - 1) + (i_1 f \alpha - 1) \bullet (i_2 g \alpha - 1) + (\omega - 1) \bullet ((i_1 f \alpha) \bullet (i_2 g \alpha) - 1). \end{aligned}$$

Now observe that

$$(i_1 f) \bullet (i_2 g) = (f \vee g)_*(i_1 \bullet i_2). \quad (8.7.4)$$

Thus  $\omega = (f \vee g)_*((i_1 \bullet i_2)\alpha) \bullet (f \vee g)_*(i_2\alpha)^{-1} \bullet (f \vee g)_*(i_1\alpha)^{-1} = (f \vee g)_*(h(\alpha))$ . It follows that  $\omega = \mathcal{T}(E, f|g)(h(\alpha)) \in \mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)$ . Hence

$$(\omega - 1) \bullet ((i_1 f \alpha) \bullet (i_2 g \alpha) - 1) \in \Theta(\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y) \otimes I(\mathcal{T}(E, X) \times \mathcal{T}(E, Y))),$$

and we deduce that

$$\begin{aligned} \Upsilon(0, t_1 f \otimes t_1 g) \cdot \alpha &= t_{11}(\Theta(0, (f-1) \otimes (g-1), 0) \cdot \alpha) \\ &= \Upsilon(t_{11}((f \vee g)h(\alpha)), t_1(f\alpha) \otimes t_1(g\alpha)), \end{aligned}$$

as desired.  $\square$

Using the natural isomorphism  $\mathcal{E} : I(\mathcal{T}(E, X)) \rightarrow U(X)$  we finally obtain:

**Corollary 8.8.** *We have a natural isomorphism of right  $\Lambda$ -modules:*

$$T_{11}cr_2(\mathcal{E})\Upsilon : T_{11}\mathcal{T}(E, X|Y) \oplus (T_1\mathcal{T}(E, X) \otimes T_1\mathcal{T}(E, Y)) \rightarrow T_{11}(cr_2U)(X, Y)$$

such that:

$$T_{11}cr_2(\mathcal{E})\gamma(t_{11}\xi, t_1f \otimes t_1g) = t_{11}(\xi + \rho_{(1,2)}^2(i_1f \bullet i_2g))$$

and where the action of  $\Lambda$  on the domain of  $T_{11}cr_2(\mathcal{E})\gamma$  is given by:

$$(t_{11}\xi, t_1f \otimes t_1g) \cdot \alpha = (t_{11}((\xi\alpha) \bullet (f \vee g)h(\alpha)), t_1(f\alpha) \otimes t_1(g\alpha)).$$

**Proof.** It suffices to combine Proposition 8.7 with the isomorphism  $T_{11}cr_2(\mathcal{E})$ . In fact,

$$\begin{aligned} T_{11}cr_2(\mathcal{E})\gamma(t_{11}\xi, t_1f \otimes t_1g) &= T_{11}cr_2(\mathcal{E})t_{11}(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1}((\xi - 1) + (i_1f - 1) \bullet (i_2g - 1)) \\ &= t_{11}(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1}\mathcal{E}((\xi - 1) + (i_1f - 1) \bullet (i_2g - 1)) \\ &= t_{11}(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1}\mathcal{E}((\xi - 1) + (i_1f \bullet i_2g - 1) \\ &\quad - (i_1f - 1) - (i_2g - 1)) \\ &= t_{11}(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1}(\xi + i_1f \bullet i_2g - i_1f - i_2g) \\ &= t_{11}(\xi + \rho_{12}^2(i_1f \bullet i_2g)) \quad \text{by (2.13.5)}. \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

#### 8.4. The action of the involution on $T_{11}(cr_2U)(X, Y)$

Since  $\hat{H}$  is a morphism of symmetric  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -modules we have to understand the action of the involution on the two components of  $T_{11}(cr_2U)(X, Y)$  according to Corollary 8.8.

For  $\xi \in \mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)$  we have the relation

$$\bar{T}^U t_{11}(\xi) = t_{11}T^{\mathcal{T}(E, -)}(\xi)$$

in  $T_{11}(cr_2U)(X, Y)$  by Proposition 1.20.

For  $f, g \in \mathcal{T}(E, X)$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} I(\tau)\iota_{(1,2)}^2\Theta(0, (f - 1) \otimes (g - 1), 0) &= I(\tau)((i_1f - 1) \bullet (i_2g - 1)) \\ &= (i_2f - 1) \bullet (i_1g - 1) \\ &= (i_2f \bullet i_1g - 1) - (i_2f - 1) - (i_1g - 1) \\ &= ([i_2f, i_1g] \bullet i_1g \bullet i_2f - 1) - (i_2f - 1) - (i_1g - 1) \\ &= ([i_2f, i_1g] - 1) + (i_1g \bullet i_2f - 1) \\ &\quad + ([i_2f, i_1g] - 1) \bullet (i_1g \bullet i_2f - 1) \\ &\quad - (i_2f - 1) - (i_1g - 1) \\ &= ([i_2f, i_1g] - 1) + (i_1g - 1) \bullet (i_2f - 1) \\ &\quad + ([i_2f, i_1g] - 1) \bullet (i_1g \bullet i_2f - 1). \end{aligned}$$

But  $[i_2 f, i_1 g] \in \mathcal{T}(E, X|Y)$ , hence we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{T}^U \Upsilon(0, t_1 f \otimes t_1 g) &= t_{11}(\iota_{(1,2)}^2)^{-1} I(\tau) \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \Theta(0, (f-1) \otimes (g-1), 0) \\ &= \Upsilon(t_{11}[i_2 f, i_1 g], t_1 g \otimes t_1 f).\end{aligned}$$

Combining this relation with (8.4) and Corollary 8.8 we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{T}^U t_{11}(\xi + \rho_{(1,2)}^2((i_1 f) \bullet (i_2 g))) \\ = t_{11}(T^{\mathcal{T}(E, -)}(\xi) + [i_2 f, i_1 g] + \rho_{(1,2)}^2((i_1 g) \bullet (i_2 f))).\end{aligned}\quad (8.8.1)$$

### 8.5. The homomorphism $\hat{H}$

By definition of a quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module the map

$$\hat{H} : T_{11}(cr_2(U))(E, E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \rightarrow M_{ee}$$

is a morphism of symmetric  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -modules. In the case of cogroups we have the following equivalent description of  $\hat{H}$ :

**Proposition 8.9.** *For a theory of cogroups  $\mathcal{T}$ , the morphism of symmetric  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -modules  $\hat{H}$  is equivalent to the following data:*

(1) *a morphism of abelian groups:*

$$H_1 : M_e \rightarrow M_{ee},$$

(2) *a morphism of symmetric  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda}$ -modules*

$$H'_2 : T_{11}\mathcal{T}(E, E|E) \otimes_{\Lambda} M_e \rightarrow M_{ee}$$

satisfying the following relations for  $\alpha \in \mathcal{T}(E, E)$  and  $a \in M_e$ :

$$H_1(\alpha a) = H'_2(t_{11}h(\alpha) \otimes a) + (\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\alpha})H_1(a), \quad (8.9.1)$$

$$TH_1(a) = H_1(a) + H'_2(t_{11}([i_2, i_1]) \otimes a). \quad (8.9.2)$$

**Proof.** Using Corollary 8.8 and relation (8.7.4) one easily verifies that when dropping the symmetry conditions, the map  $\hat{H}$  is equivalent with the maps  $H_1$  and  $H'_2$  as in (1) and (2) satisfying relation (8.9.1). In fact, given  $\hat{H}$  we may define

$$H_1(a) = \hat{H}(t_{11}\rho_{(1,2)}^2(i_1 \bullet i_2) \otimes a), \quad (8.9.3)$$

$$H'_2(t_{11}\xi \otimes a) = \hat{H}(t_{11}\xi \otimes a). \quad (8.9.4)$$

Conversely, given  $H_1$  and  $H'_2$  the associated map  $\hat{H}$  is determined by the relations (8.9.4) and

$$\hat{H}(t_{11}\rho_{(1,2)}((i_1 \alpha) \bullet (i_2 \beta)) \otimes a) = (\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})H_1(a)$$

for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{T}(E, E)$ . It remains to check that  $\hat{H}$  commutes with the respective involutions if and only if relation (8.9.2) holds. In fact,

$$\begin{aligned} & \hat{H} \bar{T}^U(t_{11}(\xi + \rho_{(1,2)}^2((i_1\alpha) \bullet (i_2\beta))) \otimes a) \\ &= \hat{H}(t_{11}(T^{\mathcal{T}(E,-)}(\xi) + [i_2\alpha, i_1\beta] + \rho_{(1,2)}^2((i_1\beta) \bullet (i_2\alpha))) \otimes a) \quad \text{by (8.7.4)} \\ &= \hat{H}(t_{11}(T^{\mathcal{T}(E,-)}(\xi) + [i_2\alpha, i_1\beta] + cr_2U(\beta, \alpha)\rho_{(1,2)}^2(i_1 \bullet i_2)) \otimes a) \\ &= H'_2(t_{11}(T^{\mathcal{T}(E,-)}(\xi) + [i_2\alpha, i_1\beta]) \otimes a) + (\bar{\beta} \otimes \bar{\alpha})H_1(a) \\ &= H'_2(t_{11}T^{\mathcal{T}(E,-)}(\xi) \otimes a) + (\bar{\beta} \otimes \bar{\alpha})H'_2([i_2, i_1] \otimes a) + (\bar{\beta} \otimes \bar{\alpha})H_1(a) \end{aligned}$$

since  $[i_2\alpha, i_1\beta] = (\beta \vee \alpha)_*[i_2, i_1] = \mathcal{T}(E, \beta | \alpha)([i_2, i_1])$  and  $H'_2$  is  $\bar{\mathcal{A}} \otimes \bar{\mathcal{A}}$ -linear. On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned} T\hat{H}(t_{11}(\xi + \rho_{(1,2)}^2((i_1\alpha) \bullet (i_2\beta))) \otimes a) &= T\hat{H}(t_{11}(\xi + cr_2U(\alpha, \beta)\rho_{(1,2)}^2(i_1 \bullet i_2)) \otimes a) \\ &= TH'_2(t_{11}\xi \otimes a) + T((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})H_1(a)) \\ &= H'_2(t_{11}T^{\mathcal{T}(E,-)}(\xi) \otimes a) + (\bar{\beta} \otimes \bar{\alpha})TH_1(a). \end{aligned}$$

Thus if relation (8.9.2) holds,  $\hat{H}$  commutes with the respective involutions; the converse is also true as we may take  $\alpha = \beta = 1_E$ .  $\square$

## 8.6. The conditions (QM1) and (QM2)

In this section we translate the conditions (QM1) and (QM2) to the case of cogroups. We begin by the remark that for each  $\xi \in \mathcal{T}(E, E \vee E)$ , there exists  $\gamma \in \mathcal{T}(E, E|E)$  such that  $\xi = \gamma \bullet i_1r_1\xi \bullet i_2r_2\xi$ . In fact,  $(r_{1*}, r_{2*})^t(\xi) = (r_1\xi, r_2\xi) = (r_{1*}, r_{2*})^t(i_1r_1\xi \bullet i_2r_2\xi)$  hence  $\xi \bullet (i_1r_1\xi \bullet i_2r_2\xi)^{-1} \in \mathcal{T}(E, E|E)$ . Thus any element of  $\mathcal{T}(E, E \vee E)$  can be written in the form  $\gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta$  for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{T}(E, E)$  and  $\gamma \in \mathcal{T}(E, E|E)$ .

**Proposition 8.10.** *For a theory of cogroups  $\mathcal{T}$ , the condition (QM1) is equivalent to the following equation:*

$$(\nabla^2\gamma \bullet \alpha \bullet \beta).a = \alpha a + \beta a + P((\bar{\alpha} \otimes \bar{\beta})H_1(a)) + PH'_2(t_{11}\gamma \otimes a)$$

for  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathcal{T}(E, E)$ ,  $a \in M_e$  and  $\gamma \in \mathcal{T}(E, E|E)$ .

**Proof.** For  $\xi \in \mathcal{T}(E, E \vee E)$  such that  $\xi = \gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta$  and  $a \in M_e$ , we have the following equations in  $U(E \vee E)$ :

$$\begin{aligned} \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \circ \rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) &= \iota_{(1,2)}^2 \circ \rho_{(1,2)}^2(\gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta) \\ &= \gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta - i_1r_1(\gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta) - i_2r_2(\gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta) \quad \text{by (2.13.5)} \\ &= \gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta - 0 \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet 0 - 0 \bullet 0 \bullet i_2\beta \\ &= \gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta - i_1\alpha - i_2\beta. \end{aligned}$$

Hence:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & (\mathcal{E})^{-1}(\iota_{(1,2)}^2 \circ \rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi)) \\
 &= (\gamma \bullet i_1 \alpha \bullet i_2 \beta - 1) - (i_1 \alpha - 1) - (i_2 \beta - 1) \\
 &= (\gamma - 1) + (i_1 \alpha \bullet i_2 \beta - 1) + (\gamma - 1) \bullet (i_1 \alpha \bullet i_2 \beta - 1) - (i_1 \alpha - 1) - (i_2 \beta - 1) \\
 &= (\gamma - 1) + (i_1 \alpha - 1) \bullet (i_2 \beta - 1) + (\gamma - 1) \bullet (i_1 \alpha \bullet i_2 \beta - 1)
 \end{aligned}$$

and:

$$(\gamma)^{-1}(T_{11}cr_2(\mathcal{E}))^{-1}(t_{11}\rho_{12}^2(\xi)) = (t_{11}\gamma, t_1\alpha \otimes t_1\beta).$$

We deduce that:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \hat{H}(t_{11}\rho_{12}^2(\xi) \otimes a) &= \hat{H}(T_{11}cr_2(\mathcal{E})\gamma(t_{11}\gamma, t_1\alpha \otimes t_1\beta) \otimes a) \\
 &= \hat{H}(t_{11}(\gamma + \rho_{(1,2)}^2(i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta)) \otimes a) \quad \text{by Corollary 8.8} \\
 &= H'_2(t_{11}\gamma \otimes a) + (t_1\alpha \otimes t_1\beta)H_1(a). \tag{8.10.1}
 \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\nabla^2\xi)a - (r_1^2\xi)a - (r_2^2\xi)a &= (\nabla^2(\gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta))a - (r_1^2(\gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta))a \\
 &\quad - (r_2^2(\gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta))a \\
 &= (\nabla^2\gamma \bullet \alpha \bullet \beta)a - (0 \bullet \alpha \bullet 0)a - (0 \bullet 0 \bullet \beta)a \\
 &= (\nabla^2\gamma \bullet \alpha \bullet \beta)a - \alpha a - \beta a. \quad \square
 \end{aligned}$$

**Proposition 8.11.** *For a theory of cogroups  $\mathcal{T}$ , the condition (QM2) is equivalent to the following equations for  $m \in M_{ee}$  and  $\gamma \in \mathcal{T}(E, E|E)$ :*

$$(QM2-1) \quad H'_2(t_{11}\gamma \otimes Pm) = 0,$$

$$(QM2-2) \quad H_1(Pm) = m + Tm.$$

**Proof.** For  $m \in M_{ee}$  and  $\xi \in \mathcal{T}(E, E \vee E)$  such that  $\xi = \gamma \bullet i_1\alpha \bullet i_2\beta$  as above, we have:

$$\hat{H}(t_{11}\rho_{(1,2)}^2(\xi) \otimes Pm) = H'_2(t_{11}\gamma \otimes Pm) + (t_1\alpha \otimes t_1\beta)H_1(Pm)$$

by (8.10.1). On the other hand:

$$(t_1r_1(\xi) \otimes t_1r_2(\xi))(m + Tm) = (t_1\alpha \otimes t_1\beta)(m + Tm).$$

Hence the condition (QM2) is equivalent to the condition:

$$H'_2(t_{11}\gamma \otimes Pm) + (t_1\alpha \otimes t_1\beta)H_1(Pm) = (t_1\alpha \otimes t_1\beta)(m + Tm).$$

Since  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  are independent, taking  $\alpha = 0$  we deduce (QM2-1) and taking  $\gamma = 0$  and  $\alpha = \beta = 1_E$  we deduce (QM2-2). The converse is clear.  $\square$

### 8.7. Proof of Theorem 8.1

This now is an easy combination of Corollary 8.8 and Propositions 8.9 and 8.11: let  $M$  be a quadratic  $\mathcal{C}$ -module relative to  $E$ . First use Proposition 8.9 to replace the map  $\hat{H}$  by  $H_1$  and  $H'_2$ , then  $H'_2$  by  $H_2$  using relation (QM2-1). Now the main feature is that relation (QM2-2) implies that  $T$  is determined by  $H_1$  and  $P$ , as

$$T = H_1 P - 1.$$

Using this, the relation  $PT = P$  becomes (T1), which, in the converse proof, implies that  $T$  is an involution. Next (T2) translates the relation  $T((\alpha \otimes \beta)m) = (\beta \otimes \alpha)T(m)$ . Relation (8.9.2) becomes (T3), while (T4) translates the fact that  $H_2$  is compatible with the respective involutions. Finally, (T5) is relation (QM1) and (T6) is (8.9.1).

### 8.8. Application: quadratic functors from free groups of finite rank to $Ab$

In this section we apply Theorems 7.1 and 8.1 to the category  $\mathcal{C} = Gr$ , or equivalently, to the theory  $\mathcal{T} = \langle \mathbb{Z} \rangle_{Gr}$  of free groups of finite rank. Baues and Pirashvili described quadratic functors from  $\mathcal{T}$  to  $Gr$  and  $Ab$  in terms of simpler data in [4]. We start by recalling the simplified version of this description given in [3].

**Definition 8.12.** (See [4].) A square group is a diagram

$$M = (M_e \xrightarrow{H} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{P} M_e)$$

where  $M_e$  is a group and  $M_{ee}$  is an abelian group. Both groups are written additively. Moreover  $P$  is a homomorphism and  $H$  is a quadratic map, that is, the cross effect

$$(a \mid b)_H = H(a + b) - H(a) - H(b)$$

is linear in  $a, b \in M_e$ . In addition the following identities are satisfied for all  $x, y \in M_e$  and  $a, b \in M_{ee}$ :

$$(Pa \mid y)_H = 0 = (x \mid Pb)_H;$$

$$P(x \mid y)_H = -x - y + x + y;$$

$$PHP(a) = 2P(a).$$

**Theorem 8.13.** (See [4].) The category of quadratic functors from  $\langle \mathbb{Z} \rangle_{Gr}$  to  $Ab$  (or of quadratic endofunctors of  $Gr$  preserving filtered colimits and reflexive coequalizers) is equivalent to the category of square groups with  $H$  linear.

We reprove this theorem by specializing our general results to the case  $\mathcal{T} = \langle \mathbb{Z} \rangle_{Gr}$ , as follows.

**Proof.** Since  $\langle \mathbb{Z} \rangle_{Gr}$  is a theory of cogroups we can apply Theorem 8.1. Let  $M$  be a diagram as in this theorem. Condition (T1) shows that

$$\text{Square}(M) = (M_e \xrightarrow{H_1} M_{ee} \xrightarrow{P} M_e)$$

is a square group such that  $H_1$  is linear. So we have to prove that the remaining structure of  $M$  is determined and well defined by  $\text{Square}(M)$  when one requires the conditions (T2)–(T6) to hold.

First of all,

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{\Lambda} &= (T_1 U)(\mathbb{Z}) \quad \text{by Proposition 3.7} \\ &\simeq (T_1 I(Gr(\mathbb{Z}, -)))(\mathbb{Z}) \\ &\simeq T_1(Gr(\mathbb{Z}, -))(\mathbb{Z}) \quad \text{by Proposition 8.5} \\ &\simeq T_1(Id_{Gr})(\mathbb{Z}) \\ &\simeq \mathbb{Z} \quad \text{by Proposition 2.2.} \end{aligned}$$

We deduce that  $\bar{\Lambda} \otimes \bar{\Lambda} \simeq \mathbb{Z}$  hence condition (T2) is trivially satisfied.

The isomorphism of endofunctors of  $Gr$ :

$$v : Gr(\mathbb{Z}, -) \rightarrow Id_{Gr}, \quad v_G(f) = f(1)$$

induces an isomorphism of bifunctors

$$T_{11}(cr_2 v) : T_{11} cr_2(Gr(\mathbb{Z}, -)) \rightarrow T_{11} cr_2(Id_{Gr})$$

such that

$$T_{11}(cr_2 v)_{G,H}(t_{11}(\xi)) = t_{11}(\xi(1)) \quad (8.13.1)$$

for  $\xi \in cr_2 Gr(\mathbb{Z}, -)(G, H)$ . So by Proposition 2.3,

$$T_{11} cr_2(Gr(\mathbb{Z}, -))(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}) \simeq \mathbb{Z}; \quad (8.13.2)$$

and  $T_{11} cr_2(Gr(\mathbb{Z}, -))(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z})$  is generated by the commutator  $t_{11}[i_2, i_1]$ . We deduce that condition (T3) means that  $H_2$  is determined by  $\text{Square}(M)$  and satisfies

$$P H_2 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad H_2(t_{11} \gamma \otimes \bar{a}) = 0$$

by (T1). However, starting out with the square group  $\text{Square}(M)$ , condition (T3) a priori only gives rise to a map

$$\tilde{H}_2 : T_{11} cr_2(Gr(\mathbb{Z}, -))(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \text{coker}(P) \rightarrow M_{ee};$$

in order to check that it factors through the tensor product over  $\Lambda$  we must first consider the action of  $\Lambda$  on  $M_e$ .



Let  $n : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  be the homomorphism such that  $1 \mapsto n$ . Consider condition (T5). By (8.13.2) we have  $\gamma = k[i_2, i_1]$ ,  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ , whence  $\nabla^2 \gamma = k[Id, Id] = 0$ . As we know that  $PH_2 = 0$ , condition (T5) is equivalent to the relation

$$([n] \bullet [m])a = [n]a + [m]a + P((\overline{[n]} \otimes \overline{[m]})H_1(a)). \quad (8.13.3)$$

which by induction is equivalent to

$$[n]a = na + \binom{n}{2} PH_1(a). \quad (8.13.4)$$

So (T5) means that the action of  $\Lambda$  on  $M_e$  is determined by  $\text{Square}(M)$ , via (8.13.4); the property to be an action is a formal consequence of the identity

$$\binom{nm}{2} = m \binom{n}{2} + n \binom{m}{2} + 2 \binom{n}{2} \binom{m}{2}$$

for  $n, m \in \mathbb{Z}$ .

By (8.13.4),  $[n]\bar{a} = n\bar{a}$  in  $\text{coker}(P)$ . On the other hand, for  $\gamma \in cr_2(\text{Gr}(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z} | \mathbb{Z}))$  we have:

$$\gamma([n + m]) = \gamma([n] \bullet [m]) = \gamma([n]) \bullet \gamma([m]).$$

Since  $\gamma([1]) = \gamma$  we deduce that  $\gamma([n]) = (\gamma([1]))^{\bullet n} = \gamma^{\bullet n}$ . Hence the right action of  $\Lambda$  on  $T_{11}cr_2(\text{Gr}(\mathbb{Z}, -))(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z})$  is given by

$$t_{11}(\gamma) \cdot [n] = t_{11}(\gamma[n]) = t_{11}(\gamma^{\bullet n}) = nt_{11}(\gamma).$$

We deduce that:

$$T_{11}cr_2(\text{Gr}(\mathbb{Z}, -))(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}) \otimes_{\Lambda} \text{coker}(P) = T_{11}cr_2(\text{Gr}(\mathbb{Z}, -))(\mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \text{coker}(P) \simeq \text{coker}(P).$$

So finally we obtain that  $H_2 = \tilde{H}_2$  is well defined.

The fact that  $P$  is  $\Lambda$ -equivariant is equivalent to condition (T1) by (8.13.4).

Condition (T4) is trivially satisfied since  $PH_2 = 0$  and  $\gamma \bullet \tau\gamma = (k[i_2, i_1]) \bullet (k[i_1, i_2]) = 0$ .

So it remains to show that condition (T6) is a consequence of the others. For this we need the following lemma:

**Lemma 8.14.** *Let  $G$  and  $H$  be two groups. Then for  $g \in G$ ,  $h \in H$  and  $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ , the following identity holds in  $T_{11}cr_2(\text{Id}_{Gr})(G, H)$ :*

$$t_{11}(((i_1g)(i_2h))^n (i_2h)^{-n} (i_1g)^{-n}) = t_{11}([i_2h, i_1g]^{\binom{n}{2}}).$$

**Proof.** Consider the following diagram where  $\gamma_3(G) = [[G, G], G]$ , the isomorphism  $\Gamma'_{11}$  is defined in the proof of Proposition 2.3,  $p$  is the canonical projection, and the map  $c$  is given by  $c(\bar{g} \otimes \bar{h}) = [i_1 g, i_2 h]$ .

$$\begin{array}{ccc} cr_2(Id_{Gr})(G, H) & \xrightarrow{\quad inc \quad} & G \vee H \\ \downarrow t_{11} & & \downarrow p \\ T_{11}cr_2(Id_{Gr})(G, H) & \xrightarrow[\Gamma'_{11}]{\quad} G^{ab} \otimes H^{ab} \xrightarrow{\quad c \quad} (G \vee H)/\gamma_3(G \vee H). \end{array}$$

The diagram commutes as is easily checked on the canonical generators  $t_{11}[i_1 g, i_2 h]$  of  $T_{11}cr_2(Id_{Gr})(G, H)$ , see Proposition 2.3. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} (c\Gamma'_{11})t_{11}(((i_1 g)(i_2 h))^n (i_2 h)^{-n} (i_1 g)^{-n}) &= p(((i_1 g)(i_2 h))^n (i_2 h)^{-n} (i_1 g)^{-n}) \\ &= p([i_2 h, i_1 g]^{\binom{n}{2}}) \quad \text{by the Hall–Petrescu formula} \\ &= (c\Gamma'_{11})t_{11}([i_2 h, i_1 g]^{\binom{n}{2}}). \end{aligned}$$

But the map  $c$  is injective, see [13, Proposition 1.2].  $\square$

This implies that

$$t_{11}(h([n])) = \binom{n}{2} t_{11}[i_2, i_1];$$

in fact,

$$\begin{aligned} T_{11}(cr_2 v)(t_{11}(h([n]))) &= t_{11}(h([n])(1)) \quad \text{by (8.13.1)} \\ &= t_{11}(((i_1 \bullet i_2)[n]) \bullet (i_2[n])^{-1} \bullet (i_1[n])^{-1})(1)) \\ &= t_{11}(((i_1 \bullet i_2)(n)) i_2(n)^{-1} i_1(n)^{-1}) \\ &= t_{11}(((i_1 \bullet i_2)(1))^n i_2(1)^{-n} i_1(1)^{-n}) \\ &= t_{11}((i_1(1) i_2(1))^n i_2(1)^{-n} i_1(1)^{-n}) \\ &= t_{11}([i_2(1), i_1(1)]^{\binom{n}{2}}) \quad \text{by Lemma 8.14} \\ &= t_{11}([i_2, i_1]^{\bullet \binom{n}{2}}(1)) \\ &= T_{11}(cr_2 v)(t_{11}([i_2, i_1]^{\bullet \binom{n}{2}})) \\ &= T_{11}(cr_2 v)\left(\binom{n}{2} t_{11}([i_2, i_1])\right). \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned}
H_2(t_{11}h([n]) \otimes \bar{a}) + n^2 H_1(a) &= \binom{n}{2} H_2(t_{11}[i_2, i_1] \otimes \bar{a}) + n^2 H_1(a) \\
&= \binom{n}{2} (H_1 P H_1(a) - 2H_1(a)) + n^2 H_1(a) \quad \text{by condition (T3)} \\
&= \binom{n}{2} H_1 P H_1(a) + n H_1(a) \\
&= H_1([n]a) \quad \text{by (8.13.4),}
\end{aligned}$$

as desired.  $\square$

**Remark 8.15.** In the definition of square group given in [4] the authors consider the map:  $\Delta(a) = HPH(a) + H(2a) - 4H(a)$ . When  $H$  is linear we have  $\Delta = HPH - 2H$ . So the map  $\Delta$  corresponds to our map  $H_2$  according to condition (T3).

**Remark 8.16.** The case of the theory of free groups of finite rank is very simple compared to a general theory of cogenerated groups since a quadratic  $Gr$ -module relative to  $\mathbb{Z}$  must satisfy only the single condition (T1) instead of the six conditions (T1)–(T6) in the general situation.

## Acknowledgments

We are indebted to Teimuraz Pirashvili for suggesting the alternative approach of quadratic functors on theories, based on the Yoneda lemma, which became Chapter 4 of the present version of the paper.

En outre, le premier auteur tient à remercier vivement son ami Jean Wielchuda pour son accueil chaleureux et son excellente cuisine lors de ses trois séjours à Strasbourg.

## References

- [1] Hans-Joachim Baues, Quadratic functors and metastable homotopy, *J. Pure Appl. Algebra* 91 (1–3) (1994) 49–107, MR MR1255923 (94j:55022).
- [2] Hans-Joachim Baues, Winfried Dreckmann, Vincent Franjou, Teimuraz Pirashvili, Foncteurs polynomiaux et foncteurs de Mackey non linéaires, *Bull. Soc. Math. France* 129 (2) (2001) 237–257, MR MR1871297 (2002j:18004).
- [3] Hans-Joachim Baues, M. Jibladze, T. Pirashvili, Quadratic algebra of square groups, *Adv. Math.* 217 (3) (2008) 1236–1300, MR MR2383899.
- [4] Hans-Joachim Baues, Teimuraz Pirashvili, Quadratic endofunctors of the category of groups, *Adv. Math.* 141 (1) (1999) 167–206, MR MR1667150 (2000b:20073).
- [5] Francis Borceux, *Handbook of Categorical Algebra. 2*, *Encyclopedia Math. Appl.*, vol. 51, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1994, Categories and structures, MR MR1313497 (96g:18001b).
- [6] Francis Borceux, Dominique Bourn, Mal'tsev, protomodular, homological and semi-abelian categories, *Math. Appl.*, vol. 566, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, 2004, MR MR2044291 (2005e:18001).
- [7] A. Carboni, G.M. Kelly, M.C. Pedicchio, Some remarks on Mal'tsev and Goursat categories, *Appl. Categ. Structures* 1 (4) (1993) 385–421, MR MR1268510 (95c:18003).
- [8] Samuel Eilenberg, Saunders Mac Lane, On the groups  $H(\Pi, n)$ . II. Methods of computation, *Ann. of Math.* (2) 60 (1954) 49–139, MR MR0065162 (16,391a).
- [9] Benoit Fresse, *Modules over Operads and Functors*, *Lecture Notes in Math.*, vol. 1967, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 2009, MR MR2494775.
- [10] Manfred Hartl, Polynomial functors, commutators, operads and square rings, in preparation.
- [11] Manfred Hartl, Some successive quotients of group ring filtrations induced by  $N$ -series, *Comm. Algebra* 23 (10) (1995) 3831–3853, MR MR1348267 (96j:20009).

- [12] Manfred Hartl, Quadratic maps between groups, *Georgian Math. J.* 16 (1) (2009) 55–74, MR MR2527615.
- [13] Mamuka Jibladze, Teimuraz Pirashvili, Quadratic envelope of the category of class two nilpotent groups, *Georgian Math. J.* 13 (4) (2006) 693–722, MR MR2309253 (2007k:20114).
- [14] B. Johnson, R. McCarthy, A classification of degree  $n$  functors. I, *Cah. Topol. Géom. Différ. Catég.* 44 (1) (2003) 2–38, MR MR1961524 (2004b:18016).
- [15] B. Johnson, R. McCarthy, A classification of degree  $n$  functors. II, *Cah. Topol. Géom. Différ. Catég.* 44 (3) (2003) 163–216, MR MR2003579 (2004e:18015).
- [16] Saunders Mac Lane, *Categories for the Working Mathematician*, second ed., *Grad. Texts in Math.*, vol. 5, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1998, MR 1712872 (2001j:18001).
- [17] Wilhelm Magnus, Abraham Karrass, Donald Solitar, *Combinatorial Group Theory*, second ed., Dover Publications Inc., Mineola, NY, 2004, *Presentations of groups in terms of generators and relations*, MR MR2109550 (2005h:20052).
- [18] I.B.S. Passi, Polynomial maps on groups, *J. Algebra* 9 (1968) 121–151, MR MR0231915 (38 #241).
- [19] T.I. Pirashvili, Polynomial functors, *Trudy Tbiliss. Mat. Inst. Razmadze Akad. Nauk Gruzin. SSR* 91 (1988) 55–66, MR MR1029007 (91f:18004).
- [20] Teimuraz Pirashvili, Polynomial approximation of *Ext* and *Tor* groups in functor categories, *Comm. Algebra* 21 (5) (1993) 1705–1719, MR MR1213983 (94d:18020).
- [21] Teimuraz Pirashvili, Dold-Kan type theorem for  $\Gamma$ -groups, *Math. Ann.* 318 (2) (2000) 277–298, MR MR1795563 (2001i:20112).
- [22] N. Popescu, *Abelian Categories with Applications to Rings and Modules*, *London Math. Soc. Monogr.*, vol. 3, Academic Press, London, 1973, MR MR0340375 (49 #5130).